



Event Summary

CDA Implementation Guide

26 September 2019 v2.0.0

Draft for external use

Document ID: DH-xxxx:2019

Draft Version 001

THIS SPECIFICATION IS AN UNTESTED DRAFT AND IS NOT SUITABLE FOR IMPLEMENTATION.

DRAFT



Disclaimer

The Australian Digital Health Agency (“the Agency”) makes the information and other material (“Information”) in this document available in good faith but without any representation or warranty as to its accuracy or completeness. The Agency cannot accept any responsibility for the consequences of any use of the Information. As the Information is of a general nature only, it is up to any person using or relying on the Information to ensure that it is accurate, complete and suitable for the circumstances of its use.

Document control

This document is maintained in electronic form and is uncontrolled in printed form. It is the responsibility of the user to verify that this copy is the latest revision.

Security

The information contained herein must only be used for the purpose for which it is supplied and must not be disclosed other than explicitly agreed in writing with the Australian Digital Health Agency.

Copyright © 2019 Australian Digital Health Agency

This document contains information which is protected by copyright. All Rights Reserved. No part of this work may be reproduced or used in any form or by any means – graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, taping, or information storage and retrieval systems – without the permission of the Australian Digital Health Agency. All copies of this document must include the copyright and other information contained on this page.

OFFICIAL

Document Information

Key Information

Owner	National Health Chief Information Officer, Infrastructure Operations
Contact for enquiries	Australian Digital Health Agency Help Centre
t:	1300 901 001
e:	help@digitalhealth.gov.au

Product Version History

Product ver- sion	Date	Release comments
1.3	1 NaN	Initial public release.
1.4	1 NaN	This version implements changes authorised in September 2014 (by CCB--345).
2.0.0	26 Sep 2019	This version implements terminology updates and transitions from openEHR based models to FHIR-based models. This is a backwards incompatible release

Related Documents

Name	Version/Release Date
Australian Base Profiles Implementation Guide	v1.0.0 (Standard for Trial Use), Continuous Integration Build
FHIR	Release 3 (STU), Issued 19 April 2017
Participant Model Specification	Version 1.0, Issued 01 November 2018
Common - Clinical Document	Version 1.5.2, Issued 28 February 2019
CDA Rendering Specification	Version 1.0, Issued 07 March 2012
Shared Health Summary Information Requirements	Version 1.1, Issued 10 April 2015
Representing Coding in CDA Documents Implementation Guidance	Version 1.0, Issued 10 October 2011
Clinical Documents Common Conformance Profile	Version 1.7, Issued 21 December 2017

DRAFT

Acknowledgements

Council of Australian Governments

The Australian Digital Health Agency is jointly funded by the Australian Government and all state and territory governments.

Regenstrief Institute (LOINC)

This material contains content from [LOINC™](#). The LOINC table, LOINC codes, LOINC panels and forms file, and LOINC linguistic variants file are copyright © 1995-2015, Regenstrief Institute, Inc. and the Logical Observation Identifiers Names and Codes (LOINC) Committee and available at no cost under the license at the [LOINC Terms of Use](#). LOINC is a trademark of Regenstrief Institute, Inc., registered in the United States.

IHTSDO (SNOMED CT)

This material includes SNOMED Clinical Terms™ (SNOMED CT®) which is used by permission of the International Health Terminology Standards Development Organisation (IHTSDO). All rights reserved. SNOMED CT® was originally created by The College of American Pathologists. "SNOMED" and "SNOMED CT" are registered trademarks of the [IHTSDO](#).

HL7 FHIR

This product includes all or a portion of material that is HL7 FHIR Copyright © 2011+ HL7 licensed under Creative Commons "No Rights Reserved".

HL7 International

This document includes excerpts of HL7™ International standards and other HL7 International material. HL7 International is the publisher and holder of copyright in the excerpts. The publication, reproduction and use of such excerpts is governed by the [HL7 IP Policy](#) and the HL7 International License Agreement. HL7 and CDA are trademarks of Health Level Seven International and are registered with the United States Patent and Trademark Office. FHIR is a registered trademark of Health Level Seven International.

This product includes all or a portion of the HL7 Vocabulary, or is derived from the HL7 Vocabulary, subject to a license from Health Level Seven International. Your use of the HL7 Vocabulary also is subject to this license, a copy of which is accessible through the following link: <http://www.hl7.org/permalink/?VocabTables>. The current complete HL7 Vocabulary is also available through this link. The HL7 Vocabulary is copyright © 1989-2010, Health Level Seven International. All rights reserved. THE HL7 VOCABULARY IS PROVIDED "AS IS." ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES ARE DISCLAIMED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

DRAFT

Table of Contents

1. Introduction	1
1.1. Document purpose and scope	1
1.2. Context and use	1
1.3. How to read this document	2
1.4. Editorial note	2
1.5. Intended audience	2
1.6. Known issues	2
2. Guidance	5
2.1. Clinical Document Architecture Release 2	5
2.2. Australian Digital Health Agency CDA extensions	6
2.3. Conformance conventions	7
2.4. Mapping presentation and structure	10
3. Conformance	13
3.1. Conformance requirements	13
3.2. CDA narratives	14
4. Event Summary hierarchy	15
4.1. Hierarchy	15
4.2. Expanded hierarchy	17
5. CDA Header templates	23
5.1. ClinicalDocument	23
5.2. LegalAuthenticator	26
5.3. Administrative Observations	27
6. Document CDA templates	29
6.1. ClinicalDocument (Event Summary)	29
7. Participation CDA templates	33
7.1. recordTarget (Patient with Mandatory Identifier)	33
7.2. participant (Patient contact)	39
7.3. participant (generalPractitioner Base Organization)	41
7.4. participant (generalPractitioner Base Practitioner)	43
7.5. author (PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)	45
7.6. custodian (Organization with Mandatory Identifier)	47
7.7. informant (Base Patient)	49
7.8. informant (Base RelatedPerson)	51
7.9. informant (Base Practitioner)	53
7.10. performer (Base Patient)	55
7.11. performer (Base Practitioner)	57
7.12. performer (Base RelatedPerson)	59
7.13. performer (Base Organization)	61
7.14. author (Base Patient)	63
7.15. author (Base PractitionerRole)	65
7.16. author (Base RelatedPerson)	67
8. Entity CDA templates	69
8.1. providerOrganization (Base Organization)	69
8.2. participant (Organization contact)	71
8.3. representedOrganization (Base Organization)	72
8.4. assignedPerson (Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)	74
8.5. assignedPerson (Base Practitioner)	76
9. Section CDA templates	79
9.1. section (Event Overview)	79
9.2. section (Allergies)	81
9.3. section (Medications)	83
9.4. section (Medical History)	85
9.5. section (Immunisations)	87
9.6. section (Diagnostic Investigations)	89
10. Act CDA templates	91
10.1. encompassingEncounter (Summary of an Encounter for an Event)	91
10.2. encounter (Summary of an Encounter for an Event)	93

10.3. observation (Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance)	96
10.4. act (List of Medicine Changes from an Event)	103
10.5. substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Known Medicine)	106
10.6. observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding)	111
10.7. substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Vaccine)	113
10.8. observation (Summary Statement of Condition)	116
10.9. procedure (Summary Statement of Known Procedure)	121
10.10. ext:coverage (Practitioner qualification)	123
11. Common patterns	125
11.1. code	125
11.2. id	128
11.3. time	130
11.4. Entity Identifier	132
11.5. Personal Relationship	134
11.6. Qualification	136
11.7. Language Communication	137
A. Complex data type mappings to CDA (R2)	139
A.1. Identifier	140
A.2. HumanName	145
A.3. Address	147
A.4. Address as Australian Address	149
A.5. ContactPoint	151
A.6. Dosage	153
A.7. Timing	157
A.8. CodeableConcept as a Medicine Item Code	163
B. Examples	167
B.1. Event Summary example 1	168
B.2. Event Summary example 2	175
B.3. Event Summary example 3	176
C. Mapping from requirements	183
References	185

List of Examples

11.1. code	126
11.2. id	129
11.3. Simple timestamp	130
11.4. Low time	130
11.5. Interval timestamp 1	130
11.6. Interval timestamp 2	131
11.7. Width time	131
11.8. Entity Identifier	133
11.9. Personal Relationship	135
11.10. Language Communication	138
A.1. Identifier	142
A.2. HumanName	146
A.3. Address	148
A.4. Address	150
A.5. ContactPoint	152
A.6. Dosage	155
A.7. Timing	160
A.8. CodeableConcept as Medicine Item Code	163
B.1. Event Summary example 1	168
B.2. Event Summary example 2	175
B.3. Event Summary example 3	176

DRAFT

1 Introduction

1.1 Document purpose and scope

The primary aim of the implementation guide is to take implementers step by step through mapping each element of the Event Summary (ES) model ([Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide \[DH2019g\]](#)) to a corresponding CDA attribute or element. The resulting CDA document can be used for the electronic exchange of ES information between healthcare providers.

This implementation guide is not to be used as a guide to presentation (or rendering) of the data. Beyond defining conformance requirements on CDA narratives it contains no information as to how the data described by it should be displayed and no such guidance should be inferred from This implementation guide.

Reference has been made to International and Australian Standards, and to Standards from Health Level Seven. The following standard is referred to in the text in such a way that some or all of its content constitutes requirements for the purposes of this specification: [HL7 Clinical Document Architecture \[HL7CDAR2\]](#).

Wherever possible, material in this specification is based on existing standards. All efforts have been made to minimise divergence from the HL7 Australia profiles of HL7 International standards ([Australian Base Profiles Implementation Guide \[HL7AUBIG\]](#)) to provide for system interoperability and compatibility with other profiles. Issues of an editorial nature in the source material (such as spelling or punctuation errors) are intentionally reproduced.

1.2 Context and use

A CDA implementation guide is part of a package of documents and files that support the development of software to exchange a type of clinical document, a specification package.

An Agency clinical document specification package supports software developers to create and interpret instances of a clinical document. The core of each package is a specification of the information content of instances of the clinical document.

Supplementary contents of the package include statements of scenarios for which the specification is appropriate, guidance on implementing the specification, and guidance on testing purported instances.

The contents may include:

- statement of requirements
- CDA implementation guide (CDA IG) – a statement of constraints and custom extensions on [HL7 Clinical Document Architecture \[HL7CDAR2\]](#)
- FHIR implementation guide (FHIR IG) – a statement of constraints and custom extensions on [FHIR \[HL7FHIR3\]](#)
- template package library – a set of Schematron schema to test conformance of CDA documents with the specification
- conformance profile – a statement of conformance requirements for exchanging documents within a particular scenario such as the My Health Record
- A set of release notes

Specification packages contain only files relevant to the particular clinical document. Specifications that are common to many clinical documents and should be considered part of the specification package, as directed by the relevant release note and conformance profile, are contained in the [Common - Clinical Document \[DH2019a\]](#).

1.3 How to read this document

This implementation guide contains descriptions of both constraints on the CDA and, where necessary, custom extensions to the CDA, for the purposes of fulfilling the requirements for Australian implementations of ES.

These descriptions are defined as a set of CDA templates (see [Conformance conventions](#)) presented in CDA mapping tables (see [Mapping presentation and structure](#)). The mapping tables take implementers step by step through mapping each element of the ES model to a corresponding CDA attribute or element.

A logical view of the ES model ([FHIR \[HL7FHIR3\]](#) StructureDefinitions) is presented as a tree structure in a hierarchical table (see [4 Event Summary hierarchy](#)). The ES model is published as a set of [FHIR \[HL7FHIR3\]](#) profiles in [Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide \[DH2019g\]](#).

The starting point for the CDA templates is the clinical document model template defined in [ClinicalDocument \(Event Summary\)](#), which references the additional templates necessary to assert conformance for this implementation guide.

1.4 Editorial note

This implementation guide is an early working specification that is available for comment and review. It may be used to solicit feedback and to provide insight as to the expected content in a forthcoming stable and approved version of the specification.

This implementation guide may not be considered to be complete enough or sufficiently reviewed to be safe for implementation and use in production systems. It may have known issues and still be in development.

It is intended to supersede [Event Summary Structured Content Specification \[NEHT2015b\]](#) and [Event Summary CDA Implementation Guide \[NEHT2015f\]](#). This new, backwards incompatible version, is intended to address alignment to HL7 FHIR and is the result of work undertaken in conjunction with HL7 Australia.

1.5 Intended audience

This implementation guide is aimed at software development teams, architects, designers, clinicians and informatics researchers who are responsible for the delivery of clinical applications, infrastructure components and messaging interfaces, and also for those who wish to evaluate the clinical suitability of the Agency-endorsed specifications.

This implementation guide and related artefacts are technical in nature and the audience is expected to be familiar with the language of health data specifications and to have some familiarity with health information standards and specifications, such as CDA and Standards Australia IT-014 documents. Definitions and examples are provided to clarify relevant terminology usage and intent.

1.6 Known issues

This section lists known issues with this specification at the time of publishing. We are working on solutions to these issues and encourage comments to help us develop these solutions.

Reference	Description
Diagnostic Investigations section	Design of this section and its entries is in progress. It will be updated to reference appropriate Agency models (profiles) in the future.

Reference	Description
Terminology publication	The following terminology resources are not yet available in NCTS: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Healthcare Identifier Geographic Area• Empty Reason HL7 v3 NullFlavor v2• NameUse (HL7 FHIR) to Common Person Name Use
Appendix C. Examples	This chapter is a placeholder - examples are yet to be done.
Appendix D. Mapping from requirements	This chapter is a placeholder - mappings yet to be done.
Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide [DH2019g]	The corresponding Event Summary FHIR IG is currently in progress; draft content is available from https://github.com/AuDigitalHealth/ci-fhir-stu3 (public) https://stash.digitalhealth.gov.au/projects/CIL/repos/ci-fhir-stu3/browse (internal).

DRAFT

2 Guidance

2.1 Clinical Document Architecture Release 2

A CDA document is an XML document built following the rules described in the CDA specification, which conforms to the HL7 CDA schema provided by HL7. The CDA document is based on the semantics provided by the [HL7 V3 RIM, Data types and Vocabulary \[HL7V3DT\]](#).

A CDA document has two main parts: the header and the body.

The CDA document header is consistent across all CDA documents, regardless of document type. The header identifies and classifies the document and provides information on authentication, the encounter, the patient, and the involved providers.

The body contains the clinical report. The body can be marked-up text (narrative, renderable text) or a combination of both marked-up text and structured data. The marked-up text can be transformed to XHTML and displayed to a human. The structured data allows machine processing of the information shown in the narrative section.

All clinical information is required to be marked up in CDA narratives. These narratives are CDA-defined hypertext, able to be rendered in web browsers with only a standard accompanying transformation. This transformation is produced and distributed by HL7.

The rendered narrative can stand alone as a source of authenticated information for consuming parties. Content from the CDA body is not to be omitted from the narrative.

Further information and conformance requirements on the CDA narrative is available in [CDA narratives](#).

The following references are recommended to gain a better understanding of CDA:

- [HL7 Clinical Document Architecture \[HL7CDAR2\]](#)
- [HL7 V3 RIM, Data types and Vocabulary \[HL7V3DT\]](#)
- [CDA Examples \[RING2009\]](#)
- [CDA Validation Tools: infoway_release_2_2X_18.zip \[INFO2009\]](#)

2.2 Australian Digital Health Agency CDA extensions

As part of the CDA, standard extensions are allowed as follows:

Locally-defined markup may be used when local semantics have no corresponding representation in the CDA specification. CDA seeks to standardize the highest level of shared meaning while providing a clean and standard mechanism for tagging meaning that is not shared. In order to support local extensibility requirements, it is permitted to include additional XML elements and attributes that are not included in the CDA schema. These extensions should not change the meaning of any of the standard data items, and receivers must be able to safely ignore these elements. Document recipients must be able to faithfully render the CDA document while ignoring extensions.

Extensions may be included in the instance in a namespace other than the HL7v3 namespace, but must not be included within an element of type ED (e.g., <text> within <procedure>) since the contents of an ED datatype within the conformant document may be in a different namespace. Since all conformant content (outside of elements of type ED) is in the HL7 namespace, the sender can put any extension content into a foreign namespace (any namespace other than the HL7 namespace). Receiving systems must not report an error if such extensions are present. [HL7 Clinical Document Architecture \[HL7CDAR2\]](#)

A number of extensions to CDA have been defined in this implementation guide. To maintain consistency, the same development paradigm has been used as CDA.

These Australian Digital Health Agency CDA extensions have been added to the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema and are incorporated in the namespace <http://ns.electronichealth.net.au/Ci/Cda/Extensions/3.0> as shown in [Appendix B, Examples](#). Future versions of CDA extensions will be versioned as per the following example:

<http://ns.electronichealth.net.au/Ci/Cda/Extensions/4.0>

The Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema therefore differs from the base HL7 CDA W3C XML schema (referred to in this document as the HL7 CDA schema). CDA documents which include extensions will fail to validate against the HL7 CDA schema – this is a known limitation.

An event summary document that conforms to this specification will validate against the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema that accompanies this specification, and will validate against the HL7 CDA schema once the extensions have been removed. Note that merely passing schema validation does not ensure conformance. For more information, refer to [Conformance requirements](#).

2.3 Conformance conventions

Templates

This implementation guide specifies the CDA templates for implementing the document model that is the subject of this implementation guide, i.e. Event Summary. >A CDA template is a set of constraints, and where necessary, custom extensions to [HL7 Clinical Document Architecture \[HL7CDAR2\]](#).

In this implementation guide CDA templates are presented in a CDA mapping table and indicated by the presence of a `templateId`.

Template identifiers (`templateId`) are unique to each CDA template. When valued in an instance, the template identifier signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints. The root value of this attribute (e.g. `@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.1002.226"`) provides a unique identifier for the template in question. The extension value of this attribute (e.g. `@extension="1.0"`) provides the version identifier for the template in question.

Open and closed templates

A CDA template may be either an open template or a closed template. In an open template all of the features of the CDA R2 base specification [HL7 V3 RIM, Data types and Vocabulary \[HL7V3DT\]](#) are allowed except as constrained by explicitly specified constraints. In a closed template everything that is allowed must be explicitly specified and nothing further may be allowed.

For example if a specification of a CDA template says nothing about the use of the `id` element:

- In an open template context this means that `id` is allowed as specified in the schema
- In a closed template context this means that no use of `id` is allowed

The template context in this implementation guide is that of an open template unless otherwise stated.

Terminology binding

Vocabulary is specified in this implementation guide, in some cases binding an element to a value set or binding an attribute to a single fixed code. For guidance on coding common clinical concepts in CDA documents see [Representing Coding in CDA Documents Implementation Guidance \[NEHT2011bv\]](#).

A value set binding, if present in this specification, will be specified in the "Constraints and comments" column of a CDA mapping table as the title of the value set (hyperlinked to its definition) followed by identification of the binding strength (hyperlinked to its definition), e.g. [v3 Code System ParticipationFunction \(required\)](#).

Conformance verbs

Where used in this document, the keywords **SHALL**, **SHOULD**, **MAY**, **SHALL NOT** and **SHOULD NOT** from [Key Words for Use in RFCs to Indicate Requirement Levels \[RFC2119\]](#) are to be interpreted as described in the table below.

Conformance verbs

Conformance verb	Interpretation
SHALL	<p>An absolute requirement.</p> <p>Where SHALL appears in any conformance constraint it indicates a mandatory requirement.</p> <p>Where SHALL is applied to the occurrences of an element or attribute then that element or attribute must be present but can be null if the value is not known and the value has not been constrained to not allow a null value.</p>
SHOULD	<p>A requirement that is considered best practice or recommendation for inclusion. There may be valid reasons to ignore an item, but the full implications must be understood and carefully weighed before choosing a different course.</p> <p>Where SHOULD appears in an conformance constraint that constrains the allowed occurrences of an item it indicates that the item may not be present but does not override the upper bound of the cardinality range.</p> <p>For a sending application where SHOULD is applied to the occurrences of an item then that item must be present if a sending application has the data for that data element. If the value is not known the element or attribute does not need to be included.</p> <p>Implementers must support an optional requirement.</p>
MAY	<p>A requirement that can be included or omitted as the author decides with no implications.</p> <p>Where MAY appears in a conformance constraint that constrains the allowed occurrences of an item it indicates that the item may not be present but does not override the upper bound of the cardinality range.</p> <p>Implementers must support an optional requirement.</p>
SHALL NOT	<p>An absolute prohibition.</p> <p>Where SHALL NOT appears in any conformance constraint it indicates a mandatory prohibition requirement.</p>

Conformance verb	Interpretation
SHOULD NOT	A requirement that is considered best practice or recommendation for against inclusion. There may be valid reasons to ignore an item, but the full implications must be understood and carefully weighed before choosing a different course. Where SHOULD NOT appears in a conformance constraint that constrains the allowed occurrences of an item it indicates that the item may not be present but does not override the upper bound of the cardinality range. For a sending application where SHOULD NOT is applied to the occurrences of then that element or attribute must be present if a sending application has the data for that data element. If the value is not known the element or attribute does not need to be included. Implementers must support an optional requirement.

Cardinality

The cardinality range specifies the allowable occurrences within a document instance. Cardinality range is specified in the format "m..n" where m is the minimum allowed members of the set (lower bound) and n is the maximum allowed members of the set (upper bound). The allowed values for m and n are 0, any positive integer, and *.

The table below demonstrates a representative set of examples of cardinality range and how to interpret that cardinality range; p is positive integer greater than the minimum allowed members of the set.

Cardinality range	Interpretation
0..0	zero (explicitly prohibited)
0..1	zero or one
1..1	exactly one
0..*	zero or more
1..*	at least one
2..*	at least two
1..p	at least one and not more than p
2..p	at least two and not more than p

2.4 Mapping presentation and structure

The content of this implementation guide is a set of CDA templates that are presented as a mapping from the logical view of a set of models (i.e. [FHIR \[HL7FHIR3\]](#) StructureDefinitions) to CDA. These models are published as [FHIR \[HL7FHIR3\]](#) profiles in [Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide \[DH2019g\]](#).

CDA templates are located within a templates chapter, e.g. [9 Section CDA templates](#). The heading for each child section identifies the CDA schema element that is templated, and may also identify the name of part of the ES model that template corresponds to, e.g. observation (Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance) defines the CDA template of the observation CDA schema element to represent the model for Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance.

A CDA mapping table aims to take implementers step by step through mapping each element of the ES model to a corresponding CDA attribute or element. The following section describes in more detail the fields used to present the mapping content in this implementation guide.

x.x CDA schema element (model / element)

Implementation guidance specific to the usage scenarios expected to be supported by this implementation guide may be present above the mapping table. This content is informative; there may be valid reasons not to follow this guidance, but the full implications must be understood and carefully weighed before choosing a different course.

CDA mapping

Element	Element descrip- tion	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and com- ments
CDA conformance level, e.g. CDA Header, CDA Body Level 3 Data Elements					
The logical hierarchical path in the ES model expressed using names of the elements in the ES model. If there is a name in round brackets after the path, this is the label for that element or resource. The text in bold (the last in the path) is the subject for this row. i.e. Parent (Label) > Child e.g. AllergyIntolerance (Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance) > patient	The description of the element in the ES model. (See Conformance conventions)	The cardinality of the element in the ES model. (See Conformance conventions)	The type of the element (hyper-linked to the definition of the [HL7FHIR3] type) in the ES model. This may be expressed as a type that is further constrained by a model in the convention <type> as <model name>, e.g. Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier.	<p>Context: The root context that is applied as a prefix to the CDA schema element paths in the mapping rows below</p> <p>The CDA schema element(s) in the CDA template that correspond to the model element. The syntax for this is similar to XPath:</p> <pre>/name{[index]}n</pre> <p>Where:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> { } indicates optional { }n means a section that may repeat [index] differentiates two similar mappings <p>Example:</p> <p>participant[location] participant[location]/@typeCode="ORG" participant[location]/associatedEntity participant[location]/associatedEntity/@classCode="SDLOC" participant[location]/associatedEntity/code</p> <p>A sequence of names refers to the XML path in the CDA document. The path always starts from the context as defined in the grey header row above each group of mapping rows.</p> <p>The last name is shown in bold to make the path easier to read. The last name may be a reference to an attribute or an element, as defined in the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema.</p> <p>An index after the name, such as "participation[location]" implies that there can be two or more templates of a participation CDA schema element or that the CDA schema element name may be repeated in one or more templates. The indexes differentiate which CDA schema element is referenced in the path.</p> <p>It is possible for one model element to map to more than one CDA schema element.</p>	<p>Constraints on the CDA schema element(s).</p> <p>Terminology binding, identified by a hyperlinked value set title followed by the terminology binding strength (hyperlinked to the definition of the binding strength). When applicable, followed by a reference to a footnote that provides a hyperlink to related concept map.</p> <p>e.g. Address Type HL7 v3 (required)¹</p> <p>Additional information about the mapping and/or constraints which are identified by conformance verbs (See Conformance conventions).</p> <p>e.g. See <code> for available attributes.</p>

¹Note: The source terminology binding on address type[\[DH2019g\]](#) and the terminology binding in the representation of the model in this specification are different. Mappings between the set of concepts are defined in [v3 map for AddressType](#) concept map.

3 Conformance

3.1 Conformance requirements

This document describes how the ES model is implemented as a CDA document. Conformance claims are not made against this implementation guide directly; rather, they are made against additional conformance profiles documented elsewhere. Any document that claims conformance to any derived conformance profile **SHALL** meet these base requirements:

- It **SHALL** be a valid HL7 CDA instance. In particular:
 - It **SHALL** be valid against the HL7 CDA schema (once extensions have been removed).
 - It **SHALL** conform to the HL7 V3 R1 data type specification.
 - It **SHALL** conform to the semantics of the RIM and Structural Vocabulary.
- It **SHALL** be valid against the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema that accompanies this implementation guide after any additional extensions not in the Australian Digital Health Agency extension namespace have been removed, along with any other CDA content not described by this implementation guide.
- It **SHALL** use the mappings as they are stated in this document.
- It **SHALL** use all fixed values specified in the mappings (e.g. @attribute="FIXED_VALUE").
- It **SHALL** be valid against the additional conformance requirements that are established in this document (i.e. any normative use of the word "shall" identified by the term presented in uppercase and bold typeface).
- The narrative **SHALL** conform to the requirements described in this implementation guide.
- The document **SHALL** conform to the requirements specified in the CDA Rendering Specification [\[NEHT2012s\]](#).
- Any additional content included in the CDA document that is not described by this implementation guide **SHALL NOT** qualify or negate content described by this implementation guide and it **SHALL** be clinically safe for receivers of the document to ignore the non-narrative additions when interpreting the existing content.

A system that *consumes* ES CDA documents may claim conformance if it correctly processes conformant instance documents, including correctly understanding all the information in the header. It may, but is not required to, reject non-conformant documents. Conformant systems that consume ES CDA documents are not required to process any or all of the structured data entries in the CDA document, but they **SHALL** be able to correctly render the document for end-users when appropriate (see [Clinical Document Architecture Release 2](#)).

Conformance profiles of this document **MAY** make additional rules that override this document in regard to:

- Allowing the use of alternative value sets in place of the value sets specified in this document.
- Allowing the use of alternative identifiers in place of the Healthcare Identifiers Service identifiers.
- Making required data elements and section divisions optional.

3.2 CDA narratives

CDA requires that each section in its body include a narrative block, containing a clinically complete version of the section's encoded content using custom hypertext markup defined by HL7. The narrative is the human-readable and attestable part of a CDA document, and can stand alone as an accurate representation of the content of the document without any need to consult entries in the body.

It is a [HL7 Clinical Document Architecture \[HL7CDAR2\]](#) requirement that all clinical information **SHALL** be marked up in CDA narratives.

It is a [HL7 Clinical Document Architecture \[HL7CDAR2\]](#) requirement that the rendered narrative **SHALL** be able to stand alone as a source of authenticated information for consuming parties. Content from the CDA body **SHALL NOT** be omitted from the narrative.

There is no canonical markup for specific CDA components, but some conformance requirements apply:

- The narrative block **SHALL** be encapsulated within the text component of the CDA section.
- The narrative contents **SHALL** conform to the requirements specified in the CDA Rendering Specification.
 - In accordance with the requirement to completely represent section contents, elements of type [CodeableConcept](#) **SHALL** include an originalText or a displayName attribute (or both). Where available, the originalText **SHOULD** be found in the narrative, otherwise the displayName **SHOULD** be found in the narrative.
- The narrative contents **SHALL** completely and accurately represent the clinical information encoded in the section. Content **SHALL NOT** be omitted from the narrative.
- The narrative **SHALL** conform to the content requirements of the CDA specification [\[HL7CDAR2\]](#) and the XML schema.

Clinical judgement is required to determine the appropriate presentation for narrative. We may release additional guidance in this regard. The examples provided in sections of this document offer some guidance for narrative block markup and may be easily adapted as boilerplate markup.

4 Event Summary hierarchy

An event summary document is defined as:

A clinical document written by the nominated provider, which contains key pieces of information about an individual's health status and is useful to a wide range of providers in assessing individuals and delivering care. [Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide \[DH2019g\]](#)

4.1 Hierarchy

The hierarchy below provides a logical view of the Event Summary model as a tree structure in a hierarchical table; it is not intended to represent how the data contents are represented in a CDA document.

Each row contains information about a single element. The top level row contains two occupied cells: Name of the document model, and the Type (hyperlinked to the definition of the type).

Each following row contains three occupied cells: Name of the child element in the model, Cardinality (the lower and upper bounds on how many times this element is allowed to appear in the resource), and the Type (hyperlinked to the definition of the type). Type may be expressed as a type that is further constrained by a referenced model, e.g. Patient as Base Patient.

Name	Cardinality	Type
Composition (Event Summary)		DomainResource
composition-author-role	1..1	Reference(PractitionerRole as PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)
identifier	0..1	Identifier
status	1..1	code
type	1..1	CodeableConcept
subject	1..1	Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)
encounter	1..1	Reference(Encounter as Summary of an Encounter for an Event)
date	1..1	dateTime
author	1..1	Reference(Practitioner as Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)
title	1..1	string
attester (Legal Attester)	1..1	BackboneElement
mode	1..1	code
time	1..1	dateTime
party	1..1	Reference(Practitioner as Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)
custodian	1..1	Reference(Organization as Organization with Mandatory Identifier)
section (Event Overview)	1..1	BackboneElement
title	1..1	string
code	1..1	CodeableConcept
text	1..1	Narrative
entry	1..1	Reference(Encounter as Summary of an Encounter for an Event)
section (Allergies)	0..1	BackboneElement
title	1..1	string
code	1..1	CodeableConcept
text	1..1	Narrative

Name			Cardinality	Type
		entry	0..*	Reference (AllergyIntolerance as Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance)
		emptyReason	0..1	CodeableConcept
		section (Medications)	0..1	BackboneElement
		title	1..1	string
		code	1..1	CodeableConcept
		text	1..1	Narrative
		entry	0..1	Reference (List as List of Medicine Changes from an Event Observation as Assertion of No Relevant Finding)
		emptyReason	0..1	CodeableConcept
		section (Medical History)	0..1	BackboneElement
		title	1..1	string
		code	1..1	CodeableConcept
		text	1..1	Narrative
		entry	0..*	Reference (Condition as Summary Statement of Condition Procedure as Summary Statement of Known Procedure Observation as Assertion of No Relevant Finding)
		emptyReason	0..1	CodeableConcept
		section (Immunisations)	0..1	BackboneElement
		title	1..1	string
		code	1..1	CodeableConcept
		text	1..1	Narrative
		entry	0..*	Reference (Immunization as Summary Statement of Vaccine Observation as Assertion of No Relevant Finding)
		emptyReason	0..1	CodeableConcept
		section (Diagnostic Investigations)	0..1	BackboneElement
		title	1..1	string
		code	1..1	CodeableConcept
		text	1..1	Narrative

4.2 Expanded hierarchy

The hierarchy below provides an expanded logical view of the Event Summary model as a tree structure in a hierarchical table that includes the structure of the first level of referenced models; it is not intended to represent how the data contents are represented in a CDA document.

Each row contains information about a single element. The top level row contains two occupied cells: Name of the document model, and the Type (hyperlinked to the definition of the type).

Each following row contains three occupied cells: Name of the child element in the model, Cardinality (the lower and upper bounds on how many times this element is allowed to appear in the resource), and the Type (hyperlinked to the definition of the type). Type may be expressed as a type that is further constrained by a referenced model, e.g. Patient as Base Patient.

Name		Cardinality	Type
Composition (Event Summary)			DomainResource
	composition-author-role	1..1	Reference(PractitionerRole as PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)
	identifier	0..*	Identifier
	active	0..1	boolean
	period	0..1	Period
	practitioner	1..1	Reference(Practitioner as Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)
	organization	0..1	Reference(Organization as Base Organization)
	code	0..*	CodeableConcept
	specialty	0..*	CodeableConcept
	location	0..*	Reference(Location)
	healthcareService	0..*	Reference(HealthcareService)
	telecom	0..*	ContactPoint
	availableTime	0..*	BackboneElement
	daysOfWeek	0..*	code
	allDay	0..1	boolean
	availableStartTime	0..1	time
	availableEndTime	0..1	time
	notAvailable	0..*	BackboneElement
	description	1..1	string
	during	0..1	Period
	availabilityExceptions	0..1	string
	identifier	0..1	Identifier
	status	1..1	code
	type	1..1	CodeableConcept
	subject	1..1	Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)
	birthPlace	0..1	Address
	indigenous-status	0..1	Coding
	closing-the-gap-registration	0..1	boolean
	patient-mothersMaidenName	0..1	string
	identifier	1..*	Identifier
	active	0..1	boolean
	name	0..*	HumanName
	telecom	0..*	ContactPoint
	gender	0..1	code

Name			Cardinality	Type
		birthDate	0..1	date
		date-accuracy-indicator	0..1	Coding
		birthTime	0..1	dateTime
		deceased[x]	0..1	boolean dateTime
		date-accuracy-indicator	0..1	Coding
		address	0..*	Address
		maritalStatus	0..1	CodeableConcept
		multipleBirth[x]	0..1	boolean integer
		contact	0..*	BackboneElement
		relationship	0..*	CodeableConcept
		name	0..1	HumanName
		telecom	0..*	ContactPoint
		address	0..1	Address
		gender	0..1	code
		organization	0..1	Reference(Organization as Base Organization)
		period	0..1	Period
		communication	0..*	BackboneElement
		communication.language	1..1	CodeableConcept
		communication.preferred	0..1	boolean
		generalPractitioner	0..*	Reference(Practitioner as Base Practitioner Organization as Base Organization)
		managingOrganization	0..1	Reference(Organization as Base Organization)
	encounter		1..1	Reference(Encounter as Summary of an Encounter for an Event)
		encounter-description	0..1	string
		status	1..1	code
		class	0..1	coding
		type	0..*	CodeableConcept
		subject	1..1	Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)
		period	1..1	Period
		reason	0..*	CodeableConcept
	date		1..1	dateTime
	author		1..1	Reference(Practitioner as Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)
		identifier	1..*	Identifier
		active	0..1	boolean
		name	0..*	HumanName
		telecom	0..*	ContactPoint
		address	0..*	Address
		gender	0..1	code
		birthDate	0..1	date
		qualification	0..*	BackboneElement
		identifier	0..*	Identifier
		code	1..1	CodeableConcept
		period	0..1	Period
		issuer	0..1	Reference(Organization as Base Organization)
		communication	0..*	CodeableConcept
	title		1..1	string

Name	Cardinality		Type
attester (Legal Attester)	1..1		BackboneElement
mode	1..1		code
time	1..1		dateTime
party	1..1		Reference(Practitioner as Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)
identifier	1..*		Identifier
active	0..1		boolean
name	0..*		HumanName
telecom	0..*		ContactPoint
address	0..*		Address
gender	0..1		code
birthDate	0..1		date
qualification	0..*		BackboneElement
identifier	0..*		Identifier
code	1..1		CodeableConcept
period	0..1		Period
issuer	0..1		Reference(Organization as Base Organization)
communication	0..*		CodeableConcept
custodian	1..1		Reference(Organization as Organization with Mandatory Identifier)
identifier	1..*		Identifier
active	0..1		boolean
type	0..*		CodeableConcept
name	0..1		string
alias	0..*		string
telecom	0..*		ContactPoint
address	0..*		Address
partOf	0..1		Reference(Organization as Base Organization)
contact	0..*		BackboneElement
purpose	0..1		CodeableConcept
name	0..1		HumanName
telecom	0..*		ContactPoint
address	0..1		Address
section (Event Overview)	1..1		BackboneElement
title	1..1		string
code	1..1		CodeableConcept
text	1..1		Narrative
entry	1..1		Reference(Encounter as Summary of an Encounter for an Event)
encounter-description	0..1		string
status	1..1		code
class	0..1		coding
type	0..*		CodeableConcept
subject	1..1		Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)
period	1..1		Period
reason	0..*		CodeableConcept
section (Allergies)	0..1		BackboneElement
title	1..1		string

Name			Cardinality	Type	
	code		1..1	CodeableConcept	
	text		1..1	Narrative	
	entry		0..*	Reference(AllergyIntolerance as Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance)	
		author-related-person	0..1	Reference(RelatedPerson as Base RelatedPerson)	
		clinicalStatus	0..1	code	
		verificationStatus	1..1	code	
		type	0..1	code	
		code	1..1	CodeableConcept	
		patient	1..1	Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)	
		onset[x]	0..1	dateTime, Age, Period, Range	
		recorder	0..1	Reference(Patient as Base Patient Practitioner as Base Practitioner)	
		note	0..*	Annotation	
		reaction	0..*	BackboneElement	
			substance	0..1	CodeableConcept
			manifestation	1..*	CodeableConcept
	emptyReason			0..1	CodeableConcept
	section (Medications)			0..1	BackboneElement
	title			1..1	string
	code			1..1	CodeableConcept
	text			1..1	Narrative
	entry			0..1	Reference(List as List of Medicine Changes from an Event)
		status		1..1	code
		code		1..1	CodeableConcept
		subject		1..1	Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)
		date		0..1	dateTime
		source		0..1	Reference(Practitioner as Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)
		entry		1..*	BackboneElement
			change-description	0..1	string
			flag	1..1	CodeableConcept
			item	1..1	Reference(MedicationStatement as Summary Statement of Known Medicine)
	entry			0..1	Reference(Observation as Assertion of No Relevant Finding)
		status		1..1	code
		code		1..1	CodeableConcept
		subject		1..1	Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)
		effective[x]		0..1	dateTime Period
		performer		0..*	Reference(Practitioner as Base Practitioner Organization as Base Organization RelatedPerson as Base RelatedPerson) Patient as Base Patient)
		value[x]		1..1	CodeableConcept
	emptyReason			0..1	CodeableConcept
	section (Medical History)			0..1	BackboneElement
	title			1..1	string
	code			1..1	CodeableConcept
	text			1..1	Narrative
	entry			0..*	Reference(Condition as Summary Statement of Condition)

Name			Cardinality	Type
		recorder	0..1	Reference(Practitioner as Base Practitioner) (Patient as Base Patient) (RelatedPerson as Base RelatedPerson)
		clinicalStatus	0..1	code
		verificationStatus	0..1	code
		code	1..1	CodeableConcept
		subject	1..1	Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)
		onset[x]	0..1	dateTime, Age, Period, Range
		abatement[x]	0..1	dateTime, Age, boolean, Period, Range
		note	0..*	Annotation
	entry		0..*	Reference(Procedure as Summary Statement of Known Procedure)
		status	1..1	code
		code	1..1	CodeableConcept
		subject	1..1	Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)
		performed[x]	0..1	dateTime, Period
		note	0..*	Annotation
	entry		0..1	Reference(Observation as Assertion of No Relevant Finding)
		status	1..1	code
		code	1..1	CodeableConcept
		subject	1..1	Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)
		effective[x]	0..1	dateTime Period
		performer	0..*	Reference(Practitioner as Base Practitioner) Organization as Base Organization) RelatedPerson as Base RelatedPerson) Patient as Base Patient)
		value[x]	1..1	CodeableConcept
	emptyReason		0..1	CodeableConcept
section (Immunisations)			0..1	BackboneElement
	title		1..1	string
	code		1..1	CodeableConcept
	text		1..1	Narrative
	entry		0..*	Reference(Immunization as Summary Statement of Vaccine)
		status	1..1	code
		notGiven	1..1	boolean
		vaccineCode	1..1	CodeableConcept
		patient	1..1	Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)
		date	0..1	dateTime
		primarySource	1..1	boolean
		vaccinationProtocol	0..*	BackboneElement
			0..1	positiveInt
		doseSequence	0..1	CodeableConcept
		doseStatus	1..1	CodeableConcept
	entry		0..1	Reference(Observation as Assertion of No Relevant Finding)
		status	1..1	code
		code	1..1	CodeableConcept
		subject	1..1	Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)
		effective[x]	0..1	dateTime Period
		performer	0..*	Reference(Practitioner as Base Practitioner) Organization as Base Organization) RelatedPerson as Base RelatedPerson) Patient as Base Patient)
		value[x]	1..1	CodeableConcept

Name		Cardinality	Type
	emptyReason	0..1	CodeableConcept

DRAFT

5 CDA Header templates

This chapter contains the CDA Header requirements for this implementation guide; these are infrastructure or control requirements that are not sourced from the Event Summary model.

All the definitions in this chapter are sourced from HL7 Clinical Document Architecture, Release 2 [\[HL7CDAR2\]](#).

5.1 ClinicalDocument

CDA mapping

CDA schema element	Definition	Card	Constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements		Context: /	
ClinicalDocument	The ClinicalDocument class is the entry point into the CDA R-MIM, and corresponds to the <ClinicalDocument> XML element that is the root element of a CDA document.	1..1	<p>This template SHALL be a closed template.</p> <p>All attributes of the ClinicalDocument element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema SHALL be allowed.</p> <p>The CDA document SHALL be valid against the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema after any additional extensions not in the Australian Digital Health Agency extension namespace have been removed.</p>
ClinicalDocument/realmCode	A realmCode signals the imposition of realm-specific constraints. The value identifies the realm in question.	0..*	All attributes of the //realmCode element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema SHALL be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/typeId	A technology-neutral explicit reference to the CDA Release 2 specification.	1..1	
ClinicalDocument/typeId/@extension="POCD_HD000040"		1..1	The unique identifier for the CDA Release 2 Hierarchical Description.
ClinicalDocument/typeId/@root="2.16.840.1.113883.1.3"		1..1	The OID for HL7 Registered models.

CDA schema element	Definition	Card	Constraints and comments
ClinicalDocument/templateId	A templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints. The value provides a unique identifier for the templates in question.	1..*	<p>All attributes of the //templateId element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema SHALL be allowed.</p> <p>Exactly one template identifier SHALL indicate the constraints defined in this mapping table and have @root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100033" and @extension="1.0".</p> <p>Exactly one template identifier SHALL indicate the constraints defined in the CDA Rendering Specification [NEHT2012s] and have @root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.100.226" and @extension="1.0".</p> <p>In addition to the template identifiers above, a template identifier is expected for the clinical document model as per ClinicalDocument (Event Summary). Additional template identifiers may be required by other specifications.</p> <p>Systems are not required to recognise any other template identifiers than the clinical document model templateId in order to understand the document as a [type] but these identifiers may influence how the document must be handled.</p>
ClinicalDocument/id	Represents the unique instance identifier of a clinical document.	1..1	<p>All attributes of the //id element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema SHALL be allowed with the exception that @nullFlavor SHALL NOT be present.</p> <p>See <id> for available attributes.</p>
ClinicalDocument/effectiveTime	Signifies the document creation time, when the document first came into being. Where the CDA document is a transform from an original document in some other format, the ClinicalDocument.effectiveTime is the time the original document is created.	1..1	<p>All attributes of the //effectiveTime element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema SHALL be allowed with the exception that @nullFlavor SHALL NOT be present.</p> <p>See <time> for available attributes.</p>
ClinicalDocument/confidentialityCode/@nullFlavor="NA"	Codes that identify how sensitive a piece of information is and/or that indicate how the information may be made available or disclosed.	1..1	
ClinicalDocument/setId	Represents an identifier that is common across all document revisions.	0..1	<p>All attributes of the //setId element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema SHALL be allowed.</p> <p>See <id> for available attributes.</p>
ClinicalDocument/versionNumber	An integer value used to version successive replacement documents.	0..1	
ClinicalDocument/versionNumber/@value		1..1	
ClinicalDocument/ext:completionCode	The lifecycle status of a document.	1..1	<p>All attributes of the //completionCode element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema SHALL be allowed with the exception that @nullFlavor SHALL NOT be present.</p> <p>See <code> for available attributes.</p> <p>Australian Healthcare Clinical Document Architecture Document Lifecycle Status (required)</p>
ClinicalDocument/recordTarget	Represents the medical record that this document belongs to.	1..1	All attributes and elements of the //recordTarget element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema SHALL be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/author	Represents the humans and/or machines that authored the document.	1..1	All attributes and elements of the //author element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema SHALL be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/dataEnterer	Represents the participant who has transformed a dictated note into text.	0..1	All attributes and elements of the //dataEnterer element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema SHALL be allowed.

CDA schema element	Definition	Card	Constraints and comments
ClinicalDocument/informant	Represents an informant (or source of information) who provides relevant information, such as the parent of a comatose patient who describes the patient's behavior prior to the onset of coma. Unless otherwise stated, the patient is implicitly the informant.	0..*	All attributes and elements of the //informant element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema SHALL be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/custodian	Represents the organization from which the document originates and that is in charge of maintaining the document. The custodian is the steward that is entrusted with the care of the document. Every CDA document has exactly one custodian.	1..1	All attributes and elements of the //custodian element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema SHALL be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/informationRecipient	Represents a recipient who should receive a copy of the document.	0..*	All attributes and elements of the //informationRecipient element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema SHALL be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/legalAuthenticator	Represents a participant who has legally authenticated the document.	0..1	All attributes and elements of the //legalAuthenticator element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema SHALL be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/authenticator	Represents a participant who has attested to the accuracy of the document, but who does not have privileges to legally authenticate the document. An example would be a resident physician who sees a patient and dictates a note, then later signs it.	0..*	All attributes and elements of the //authenticator element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema SHALL be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/participant	Represents a participant not explicitly mentioned by other classes that was somehow involved.	0..*	All attributes and elements of the //participant element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema SHALL be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/inFulfillmentOf	Relates the current document to an order this document fulfills (in whole or in part).	0..*	All attributes and elements of the //inFulfillmentOf element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema SHALL be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/documentationOf	Relates the current document to the related event that this document is documentation of.	0..*	All attributes and elements of the //documentationOf element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema SHALL be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/relatedDocument	Relates the current document to a parent document.	0..*	All attributes and elements of the //relatedDocument element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema SHALL be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/authorization	Relates the current document to consents associated with this document. The consent authorizes or certifies acts specified in the current document.	0..*	All attributes and elements of the //authorization element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema SHALL be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/componentOf	Relates the current document to the encounter. The current document is a documentation of events that occurred during the encounter.	0..1	All attributes and elements of the //componentOf element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema SHALL be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/component	Relates the associated document body as a component of the document.	1..1	All attributes and elements of the //component element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema SHALL be allowed.

5.3 Administrative Observations

CDA mapping

CDA schema element	Definition	Card	Constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements			Context: /ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/
component[admin_obs]	The ES document model contains a number of elements for which there are no equivalent elements at that point in the hierarchical structure of the model mapped into CDA. These elements are considered to be "Administrative Observations" about the encounter, the patient or some other participant.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	ClinicalDocument SHALL contain at most one Administrative Observation section. The Administrative Observations section SHALL NOT be populated if there are no entries or text to go in it.
component[admin_obs]/section		1..1	
component[admin_obs]/section/templateId		1..1	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
component[admin_obs]/section/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100000"		1..1	
component[admin_obs]/section/templateId/@extension="1.0"		1..1	
component[admin_obs]/section/id		0..1	See <id> for available attributes.
component[admin_obs]/section/code		1..1	
component[admin_obs]/section/code/@code="102.16080"		1..1	
component[admin_obs]/section/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"		1..1	
component[admin_obs]/section/code/@codeSystemName		0..1	Optional CDA element. The value SHOULD be "NCTIS Data Components".
component[admin_obs]/section/code/@displayName		0..1	Optional CDA element. The value SHOULD be "Administrative Observations".
component[admin_obs]/section/title="Administrative Observations"		0..1	
component[admin_obs]/section/text		0..1	See CDA narratives .

6 Document CDA templates

This chapter contains mapping from the Composition (Event Summary) model to a CDA clinical document class, expressed as a series of CDA templates that describe how the CDA document is composed.

CDA templates are expected to be reused from one document type (or Composition model) to another. Each CDA template is presented under a heading in the format of "CDA schema element" ("model name") where "CDA schema element" is the root element for a CDA template and "model name" is the name of a model that constrains an element in the Event Summary hierarchy.

6.1 ClinicalDocument (Event Summary)

The following are the usage scenarios expected:

- A clinical information system (CIS) sends or receives a Event Summary with the My Health Record system
- A contracted service provider (CSP) sends or receives a Event Summary with the My Health Record system
- A CIS sends or receives an Event Summary with another CIS or CSP
- A CSP sends or receives an Event Summary with a CIS or another CSP
- A registered portal or registered repository receives an Event Summary

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Context: /					
Composition	A clinical document written by the nominated provider, which contains key pieces of information about an individual's health status and is useful to a wide range of providers in assessing individuals and delivering care.	1..1	DomainResource	ClinicalDocument	In addition to the template defined in this mapping table, ClinicalDocument SHALL conform to the template defined in ClinicalDocument .
				ClinicalDocument/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				ClinicalDocument/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100020"	
				ClinicalDocument/templateId/@extension="1.0"	

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Composition > composition-author-role	A practitioner role that authored this composition. This is not to be confused with who typed in the information.	1..1	Reference(PractitionerRole as PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)	ClinicalDocument/author	author SHALL conform to the template defined in author (PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier) .
Composition > identifier	Logical identifier for the composition, assigned when created. This identifier stays constant as the composition is changed over time.	0..1	Identifier	ClinicalDocument/setId	
Composition > status	The workflow/clinical status of this composition. The status is a marker for the clinical standing of the document.	1..1	code	ClinicalDocument/ext:completionCode	Australian Healthcare Clinical Document Architecture Document Lifecycle Status (required)¹
Composition > type	Specifies the particular kind of composition (e.g. History and Physical, Discharge Summary, Progress Note). This usually equates to the purpose of making the composition.	1..1	CodeableConcept	ClinicalDocument/code	
				ClinicalDocument/code/@code="34133-9"	
				ClinicalDocument/code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"	
				ClinicalDocument/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName SHOULD be "LOINC".
				ClinicalDocument/code/@displayName	Optional CDA element. displayName SHOULD be "Summary of episode note".
Composition > subject	Who or what the composition is about. The composition can be about a person, (patient or healthcare practitioner), a device (e.g. a machine) or even a group of subjects (such as a document about a herd of livestock, or a set of patients that share a common exposure).	1..1	Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)	ClinicalDocument/recordTarget	recordTarget SHALL conform to the template defined in recordTarget (Patient with Mandatory Identifier) .
Composition > encounter	Describes the clinical encounter or type of care this documentation is associated with.	1..1	Reference(Encounter as Summary of an Encounter for an Event)	ClinicalDocument/componentOf[enc]	encompassingEncounter SHALL conform to the template defined in encompassingEncounter (Summary of an Encounter for an Event) .
				ClinicalDocument/componentOf[enc]/encompassingEncounter	
Composition > date	The composition editing time, when the composition was last logically changed by the author.	1..1	dateTime	ClinicalDocument/author/time	
Composition > author	Identifies who is responsible for the information in the composition, not necessarily who typed it in.	1..1	Reference(Practitioner as Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)	ClinicalDocument/author	In CDA an author (Practitioner) is part of composition-author-role (PractitionerRole). author SHALL conform to the template defined in author (PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier) .
Composition > title	Official human-readable label for the composition.	1..1	string	ClinicalDocument/title	
Composition > attester (Legal Attester)	A participant who has attested to the accuracy of the composition/document.	1..1	BackboneElement	ClinicalDocument/legalAuthenticator	legalAuthenticator SHALL conform to the template defined in LegalAuthenticator .
Composition > attester (Legal Attester) > mode	The type of attestation the authenticator offers.	1..1	code	n/a	Not mapped separately, the logical mode of "legal" is implicit in legalAuthenticator.
Composition > attester (Legal Attester) > time	When the composition was attested by the party.	1..1	dateTime	n/a	Not mapped separately, implicit in legalAuthenticator/time/@value.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Composition > attester (Legal Attester) > party	Who attested the composition in the specified way.	1..1	ReferencePractitioner as Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier	n/a	<p>Not mapped separately, implicit in legalAuthenticator/assignedEntity.</p> <p>The practitioner SHALL have an identifier (legalAuthenticator/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier).</p>
Composition > custodian	Identifies the organization or group who is responsible for ongoing maintenance of and access to the composition/document information.	1..1	Reference(Organization as Organization with Mandatory Identifier)	ClinicalDocument/custodian	custodian SHALL conform to the template defined in custodian (Organization with Mandatory Identifier) .
Composition > section (Event Overview)	Summary information concerning the event.	1..1	BackboneElement	ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[event] ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[event]/section	section SHALL conform to the template defined in section (Event Overview) .
Composition > section (Allergies)	Information about allergies or intolerances identified or reported during this encounter. This may include statements that a patient does not have an allergy or category of allergies.	0..1	BackboneElement	ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[allergy] ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[allergy]/section	section SHALL conform to the template defined in section (Allergies) .
Composition > section (Medications)	Information about medicines that are relevant to the encounter. The medicines included do not constitute a full medications list, but are those medicines that have specifically changed as a result of the encounter, or those medicines directly relevant to the encounter.	0..1	BackboneElement	ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[meds] ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[meds]/section	section SHALL conform to the template defined in section (Medications) .
Composition > section (Medical History)	Information about the problems, diagnoses and medical or surgical procedures of a patient. This can include statements that a patient does not have a particular condition.	0..1	BackboneElement	ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[med_hist] ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[med_hist]/section	section SHALL conform to the template defined in section (Medical History) .
Composition > section (Immunisations)	Information about vaccinations administered or reported to be administered during this encounter. This may include statements that a patient has not had a particular vaccine administered.	0..1	BackboneElement	ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[imms] ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[imms]/section	section SHALL conform to the template defined in section (Immunisations) .
Composition > section (Diagnostic Investigations)	Information about diagnostic tests or procedures performed on or requested for an individual during this encounter, that are considered relevant to the individual's ongoing care. This does not include a full list of diagnostic tests and procedures performed on or request for the individual but only those that are relevant to the encounter.	0..1	BackboneElement	ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[diag_inv] ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[diag_inv]/section	section SHALL conform to the template defined in section (Diagnostic Investigations) .

¹Note: The source terminology binding on status in Event Summary [DH2019g] and the terminology binding in the representation of the model in this specification are different. Mappings between the set of concepts are defined in [CompositionStatus \(HL7 FHIR\) to Australian Healthcare Clinical Document Architecture Document Lifecycle Status](#) concept map.

7 Participation CDA templates

This chapter contains mapping from the Individual (e.g. Patient with Mandatory Identifier) and Entity (e.g. Organization with Mandatory Identifier) models to CDA participation classes, expressed as a series of CDA templates that describe how each CDA participation is composed.

CDA templates are expected to be reused from one document type (or Composition model) to another. Each CDA template is presented under a heading in the format of "CDA schema element" ("model name") where "CDA schema element" is the root element for a CDA template and "model name" is the name of a model that constrains an element in the Event Summary hierarchy.

7.1 recordTarget (Patient with Mandatory Identifier)

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements		Context: /ClinicalDocument/			
Patient	Demographics and other administrative information about an individual receiving care or other health-related services.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	DomainResource	<code>recordTarget[pat]</code>	
				<code>recordTarget[pat]/templateId</code>	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				<code>recordTarget[pat]/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100004"</code>	
				<code>recordTarget[pat]/templateId/@extension="1.0"</code>	
				<code>recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/id</code>	See <id> for available attributes.
				<code>recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/patient</code>	
Patient > birthPlace	The registered place of birth of the patient. A system may use the address.text if they don't store the birthPlace address in discrete elements.	0..1	Address	<code>recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/patient/birthplace</code>	
				<code>recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/patient/birthplace/place</code>	
				<code>recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/patient/birthplace/place/addr</code>	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Address Address as Australian Address .
Patient > indigenous-status	National Health Data Dictionary (NHDD) based indigenous status for a patient.	0..1	Coding	<code>recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/patient/ethnicGroupCode</code>	When sending to the My Health Record this element is expected to be sent. See <code> for available attributes. Australian Indigenous Status (required)

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements					
Patient > closing-the-gap-registration	Indication for eligibility for the Closing the Gap program.	0..1	boolean	entry[close_gap] entry[close_gap]/observation entry[close_gap]/observation/@classCode="OBS" entry[close_gap]/observation/@moodCode="EVN" entry[close_gap]/observation/id entry[close_gap]/observation/code entry[close_gap]/observation/code/@code="103.32011" entry[close_gap]/observation/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101" entry[close_gap]/observation/code/@codeSystemName entry[close_gap]/observation/code/@displayName entry[close_gap]/observation/value	Optional CDA element. See <id> for available attributes. codeSystemName SHOULD be "NCTIS Data Components". displayName SHOULD be "Closing the Gap Copayment Eligibility Indicator". The value is "true" if eligible for Closing the Gap co-payment. //value/@xsi:type SHALL be "BL".
Patient > patient-mothersMaidenName	Mother's maiden (unmarried) name, commonly collected to help verify patient identity.	0..1	string	entry[mothers_name] entry[mothers_name]/observation entry[mothers_name]/observation/@classCode="OBS" entry[mothers_name]/observation/@moodCode="EVN" entry[mothers_name]/observation/id entry[mothers_name]/observation/code entry[mothers_name]/observation/code/@code="103.10245" entry[mothers_name]/observation/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101" entry[mothers_name]/observation/code/@codeSystemName entry[mothers_name]/observation/code/@displayName entry[mothers_name]/observation/value	Optional CDA element. See <id> for available attributes. codeSystemName SHOULD be "NCTIS Data Components". displayName SHOULD be "Mother's Original Family Name". //value/@xsi:type SHALL be "ST".

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements		Context: /ClinicalDocument/			
Patient > identifier	An identifier for this patient.	1..*	Identifier	recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/patient/ext:asEntityIdentifier	When sending to the My Health Record an IHI is expected. See Entity Identifier for available attributes. Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Identifier .
Patient > active	Whether this patient record is in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Patient > name	A name associated with the individual.	0..*	HumanName	recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/patient/name	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): HumanName .
Patient > telecom	A contact detail (e.g. a telephone number or an email address) by which the individual may be contacted.	0..*	ContactPoint	recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/telecom	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): ContactPoint .
Patient > gender	Administrative Gender - the gender that the patient is considered to have for administration and record keeping purposes.	0..1	code	recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/patient/administrativeGenderCode	Required CDA element in the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema. Although this element is required to be instantiated, a sending system may send a patient without gender by instantiating administrativeGenderCode/@nullFlavor="NI". No other nullFlavor value SHALL be allowed. See code for available attributes. AdministrativeGender (required)
Patient > birthDate	The date of birth for the individual.	0..1	date	recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/patient/birthTime	See time for available attributes.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements					
Patient > birthDate > date-accuracy-indicator	General date accuracy indicator coding.	0..1	Coding	entry[dob_acc]	
				entry[dob_acc]/observation	
				entry[dob_acc]/observation/@classCode="OBS"	
				entry[dob_acc]/observation/@moodCode="EVN"	
				entry[dob_acc]/observation/id	Optional CDA element. See <id> for available attributes.
				entry[dob_acc]/observation/code	
				entry[dob_acc]/observation/code/@code="102.16234"	
				entry[dob_acc]/observation/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"	
				entry[dob_acc]/observation/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName SHOULD be "NCTIS Data Components".
				entry[dob_acc]/observation/code/@displayName	Optional CDA element. displayName SHOULD be "Date of Birth Accuracy Indicator".
				entry[dob_acc]/observation/value	//value/@xsi:type SHALL be "CS". Date Accuracy Indicator (required)
CDA Header Data Elements					
Patient > birthDate > patient-birthTime	The time of day that the Patient was born. This includes the date to ensure that the timezone information can be communicated effectively.	0..1	dateTime	n/a	Not mapped separately, encompassed in patientRole/patient/birthTime.
Patient > deceased[x]	Indicates if the individual is deceased or not. Deceased date accuracy indicator is optional.	0..1	boolean dateTime	recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/patient/ext:deceasedInd recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/patient/ext:deceasedTime	Only one of patientRole/patient/ext:deceasedInd or patientRole/patient/ext:deceasedTime SHOULD be instantiated.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements				Context: /ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[admin_obs]/section/ See Administrative Observations	
Patient > deceased[x] > date-accuracy-indicator	General date accuracy indicator coding.	0..1	Coding	entry[dod_acc]	
				entry[dod_acc]/observation	
				entry[dod_acc]/observation/@classCode="OBS"	
				entry[dod_acc]/observation/@moodCode="EVN"	
				entry[dod_acc]/observation/id	Optional CDA element. See <id> for available attributes.
				entry[dod_acc]/observation/code	
				entry[dod_acc]/observation/code/@code="102.16252"	
				entry[dod_acc]/observation/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"	
				entry[dod_acc]/observation/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName SHOULD be "NCTIS Data Components".
				entry[dod_acc]/observation/code/@displayName	Optional CDA element. displayName SHOULD be "Date of Death Accuracy Indicator".
				entry[dod_acc]/observation/value	//value/@xsi:type SHALL be "CS". Date Accuracy Indicator (required)
CDA Header Data Elements				Context: /ClinicalDocument/	
Patient > address	Addresses for the individual.	0..*	Address	recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/addr	When sending to the My Health Record this element is not expected to be sent. Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Address Address as Australian Address .
Patient > maritalStatus	This field contains a patient's most recent marital (civil) status.	0..1	CodeableConcept	recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/patient/maritalStatusCode	See <code> for available attributes. Marital Status Codes (extensible)
Patient > multipleBirth[x]	Indicates whether the patient is part of a multiple (bool) or indicates the actual birth order (integer).	0..1	boolean integer	recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/patient/ext:multipleBirthInd recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/patient/ext:multipleBirthOrderNumber	Only one of patientRole/patient/ext:multipleBirthInd or patientRole/patient/ext:multipleBirthOrderNumber SHOULD be instantiated.
Patient > contact	A contact party (e.g. guardian, partner, friend) for the patient.	0..*	BackboneElement	participant[pat_contact]	participant[pat_contact] SHALL conform to the template defined in participant (Patient contact) .
Patient > communication	Languages which may be used to communicate with the patient about his or her health.	0..*	BackboneElement	recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/patient/languageCommunication	

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Patient > communication > language	The ISO-639-1 alpha 2 code in lower case for the language, optionally followed by a hyphen and the ISO-3166-1 alpha 2 code for the region in upper case; e.g. 'en' for English, or 'en-US' for American English versus 'en-EN' for England English.	1..1	CodeableConcept	recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/patient/languageCommunication/ languageCode	This CDA schema element is of type CodedSimpleValue (CS). Common Languages in Australia (extensible)
Patient > communication > preferred	Indicates whether or not the patient prefers this language (over other languages he masters up a certain level).	0..1	boolean	recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/patient/languageCommunication/ preferenceInd	
Patient > generalPractitioner	Patient's nominated care provider.	0..*	Reference(Organization as Base Organization Practitioner as Base Practitioner)	participant	participant SHALL conform to the template defined in participant (generalPractitioner Base Organization) or participant (generalPractitioner Base Practitioner) .
Patient > managingOrganization	Organization that is the custodian of the patient record.	0..1	Reference(Organization as Base Organization)	recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/providerOrganization[manag_org]	providerOrganization SHALL conform to the template defined in providerOrganization (Base Organization) .

7.2 participant (Patient contact)

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements				Context: /ClinicalDocument/	
Patient > contact	A contact party (e.g. guardian, partner, friend) for the patient.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	BackboneElement	participant[pat_contact]	contact SHALL have at least:
					<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • name (participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity/associatedPerson/name), or • telecom (participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity/telecom), or • address (participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity/addr), or • organization (participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity/scopingOrganization)
				participant[pat_contact]/@typeCode="IND"	
				participant[pat_contact]/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				participant[pat_contact]/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100056"	
				participant[pat_contact]/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
				participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity	
				participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity/@typeCode="CON"	
				participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity/id	Patient > contact is represented in CDA by a participant.
Patient > contact > relationship	The nature of the relationship between the patient and the contact person.	0..*	CodeableConcept	participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity/associatedPerson/ext:personalRelationship	See <Personal Relationship> for available attributes. ContactEntityType (extensible)
Patient > contact > name	A name associated with the contact person.	0..1	HumanName	participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity/associatedPerson/name	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): HumanName .
Patient > contact > telecom	A contact detail for the person, e.g. a telephone number or an email address.	0..*	ContactPoint	participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity/telecom	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): ContactPoint .
Patient > contact > address	Address for the contact person.	0..1	Address	participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity/addr	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Address Address as Australian Address .
Patient > contact > gender	Administrative Gender - the gender that the contact person is considered to have for administration and record keeping purposes.	0..1	code	participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity/associatedPerson/ext:administrativeGenderCode	See <code> for available attributes. AdministrativeGender (required)

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Patient > contact > organization	Organization on behalf of which the contact is acting or for which the contact is working.	0..1	Reference(Organization as Base Organization)	participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity/scopingOrganization	contact > organization template is not currently defined.
				participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity/scopingOrganization/@classCode="ORG"	
Patient > contact > period	The period during which this contact person or organization is valid to be contacted relating to this patient.	0..1	Period	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.

7.3 participant (generalPractitioner Base Organization)

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements		Context: /ClinicalDocument/			
Organization	A formally or informally recognized grouping of people or organizations formed for the purpose of achieving some form of collective action. Includes companies, institutions, corporations, departments, community groups, healthcare practice groups, etc.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	DomainResource	participant[gen_prac_org]	The organization SHALL have at least: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • identifier (participant[gen_prac_org]/associatedEntity/scopingOrganization/ext:asEntityIdentifier), or • name (participant[gen_prac_org]/associatedEntity/scopingOrganization/name)
				participant[gen_prac_org]/@typeCode="PART"	
				participant[gen_prac_org]/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				participant[gen_prac_org]/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100036"	
				participant[gen_prac_org]/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
				participant[gen_prac_org]/functionCode/@code="PCP"	
				participant[gen_prac_org]/associatedEntity	
				participant[gen_prac_org]/associatedEntity/@classCode="PROV"	
				participant[gen_prac_org]/associatedEntity/id	Optional CDA element. See <id> for available attributes.
Organization > identifier	Identifier for the organization that is used to identify the organization across multiple disparate systems.	0..*	Identifier	participant[gen_prac_org]/associatedEntity/scopingOrganization/ext:asEntityIdentifier	See <Entity Identifier> for available attributes. Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Identifier .
Organization > active	Whether the organization's record is still in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Organization > type	The kind(s) of organization that this is.	0..1	CodeableConcept	participant[gen_prac_org]/associatedEntity/code	See <code> for available attributes. OrganizationType (example)
Organization > name	A name associated with the organization.	0..1	string	participant[gen_prac_org]/associatedEntity/scopingOrganization/name	In CDA name and alias are represented by //scopingOrganization/name.
Organization > alias	A list of alternate names that the organization is known as, or was known as in the past.	0..*	string	participant[gen_prac_org]/associatedEntity/scopingOrganization/name	In CDA name and alias are represented by //scopingOrganization/name.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Organization > telecom	A contact detail for the organization.	0..*	ContactPoint	participant[gen_prac_org]/associatedEntity/ telecom	telecom/@use is Organization Telecom Use HL7 V3 (required) . Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): ContactPoint .
Organization > address	An address for the organization.	0..*	Address	participant[gen_prac_org]/associatedEntity/ addr	addr/@use is Organization Address Use HL7 V3 (required) . Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Address Address as Australian Address .
Organization > partOf	The organization of which this organization forms a part.	0..1	Reference(Organization as Base Organization)	participant[gen_prac_org]/associatedEntity/scopingOrganization/ asOrganizationPartOf participant[gen_prac_org]/associatedEntity/scopingOrganization/asOrganizationPartOf/ wholeOrganization	The organization SHALL have at least: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• name (/wholeOrganization/name), or• identifier (/wholeOrganization/ext:asEntityIdentifier) Organization > partOf template is not currently defined.
CDA Header Data Elements					Context: /ClinicalDocument/
Organization > contact	Contact for the organization for a certain purpose.	0..*	BackboneElement	participant[org_contact]	participant[org_contact] SHALL conform to the template defined in participant (Organization contact) .

7.4 participant (generalPractitioner Base Practitioner)

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements		Context: /ClinicalDocument/			
Practitioner	A person who is directly or indirectly involved in the provisioning of healthcare.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	DomainResource	participant[gen_prac_prac]	The practitioner SHALL have at least: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • identifier (participant[gen_prac_prac]/associatedEntity/associatedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier), or • name (participant[gen_prac_prac]/associatedEntity/associatedPerson/name)
				participant[gen_prac_prac]/@typeCode="PART"	
				participant[gen_prac_prac]/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				participant[gen_prac_prac]/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100037"	
				participant[gen_prac_prac]/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
				participant[gen_prac_prac]/functionCode/@code="PCP"	
				participant[gen_prac_prac]/associatedEntity	
				participant[gen_prac_org]/associatedEntity/@classCode="PROV"	
				participant[gen_prac_prac]/associatedEntity/id	Optional CDA element. See < id > for available attributes.
				participant[gen_prac_prac]/associatedEntity/code	Optional CDA element. Australian and New Zealand Standard Classification of Occupations (preferred)
Practitioner > identifier	An identifier that applies to this person in this role.	0..*	Identifier	participant[gen_prac_prac]/associatedEntity/associatedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier	See < Entity Identifier > for available attributes. Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Identifier .
Practitioner > active	Whether this practitioner's record is in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Practitioner > name	The name(s) associated with the practitioner.	0..*	HumanName	participant[gen_prac_prac]/associatedEntity/associatedPerson/name	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): HumanName .
Practitioner > telecom	A contact detail for the practitioner, e.g. a telephone number or an email address.	0..*	ContactPoint	participant[gen_prac_prac]/associatedEntity/telecom	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): ContactPoint .

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Practitioner > address	Address(es) of the practitioner that are not role specific (typically home address). Work addresses are not typically entered in this property as they are usually role dependent.	0..*	Address	participant[gen_prac_prac]/associatedEntity/addr	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Address Address as Australian Address .
Practitioner > gender	Administrative Gender - the gender that the person is considered to have for administration and record keeping purposes.	0..1	code	participant[gen_prac_prac]/associatedEntity/associatedPerson/ ext:administrativeGenderCode	See code for available attributes. AdministrativeGender (required)
Practitioner > birthDate	The date of birth for the practitioner.	0..1	date	participant[gen_prac_prac]/associatedEntity/associatedPerson/ ext:birthTime	
Practitioner > qualification	Qualifications obtained by training and certification.	0..*	BackboneElement	See: instantiation choices	<p>It is possible that the qualification may be able to be captured as a complex structure or as a text list.</p> <p>instantiation choices:</p> <p>If the qualification or list of qualifications is the result of capturing a text field then this element is expected to be as //ext:Qualifications/@classCode="QUAL". See Qualification for available attributes.</p> <p>If more information can be captured than a narrative list then this logical element is expected to be instantiated as ext:coverage2[prac_qual] and SHALL conform to the template defined in ext:coverage (Practitioner qualification).</p>
Practitioner > communication	A language the practitioner is able to use in patient communication.	0..*	CodeableConcept	participant[gen_prac_prac]/associatedEntity/associatedPerson/ ext:languageCommunication	See Language Communication for available attributes.

7.5 author (PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
PractitionerRole	A specific set of Roles/Locations/specialties/services that a practitioner may perform at an organization for a period of time.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	DomainResource	author[prac_rol]	
				author[prac_rol]/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				author[prac_rol]/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100006"	
				author[prac_rol]/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
				author[prac_rol]/assignedAuthor	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints. See <id> for available attributes.
				author[prac_rol]/assignedAuthor/id	
PractitionerRole > identifier	Business identifiers for practitioner in a role.	0..*	Identifier	author[prac_rol]/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier	In CDA the identifier for both PractitionerRole and Practitioner for an author participation are expected to be included in //assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier. When sending to the My Health Record an HPI-I is expected. Cardinality of this element SHALL be interpreted as 1..*. See <Entity Identifier> for available attributes. Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Identifier .
PractitionerRole > active	Whether this practitioner's record is in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Practitioner > period	The period during which the person is authorized to act as a practitioner in these role(s) for the organization.	0..1	Period	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
PractitionerRole > practitioner	Practitioner that is able to provide the defined services for the organization.	1..1	DomainResource	author[prac_rol]/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson	assignedPerson SHALL conform to the template defined in assignedPerson (Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier) .
PractitionerRole > organization	The organization where the Practitioner performs the roles associated.	0..1	Reference(Organization as Base Organization)	author[prac_rol]/assignedAuthor/representedOrganization	representedOrganization SHALL conform to the template defined in representedOrganization (Base Organization) .
PractitionerRole > code	Roles which this practitioner is authorized to perform for the organization.	0..*	code	author[prac_rol]/assignedAuthor/code	A code equivalent to the provider's professional role, e.g. 159011008 Community pharmacist is expected. See <code> for available attributes. Australian and New Zealand Standard Classification of Occupations (preferred) or Practitioner Role (preferred) ¹

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
PractitionerRole > specialty	Specific specialty of the practitioner.	0..*	code	n/a	specialty is not currently mapped.
PractitionerRole > location	The location(s) at which this practitioner provides care.	0..*	Reference(Location)	n/a	location is not currently mapped.
PractitionerRole > healthcareService	The list of healthcare services that this worker provides for this role's Organization/Location(s).	0..*	Reference(Health-careService)	n/a	healthcareService is not currently mapped.
PractitionerRole > telecom	Contact details that are specific to the role/location/service.	0..*	ContactPoint	author[prac_rol]/assignedAuthor/telecom	In CDA the telecom for both PractitionerRole and Practitioner for an author participation are expected to be included in //assignedAuthor/telecom. Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): ContactPoint .
PractitionerRole > availableTime	A collection of times that the Service Site is available.	0..*	BackboneElement	n/a	availableTime is not currently mapped.
PractitionerRole > notAvailable	The HealthcareService is not available during this period of time due to the provided reason.	0..*	string	n/a	notAvailable is not currently mapped.
PractitionerRole > availabilityExceptions	A description of site availability exceptions, e.g. public holiday availability. Succinctly describing all possible exceptions to normal site availability as details in the available Times and not available Times.	0..1	CodeableConcept	n/a	availabilityExceptions is not currently mapped.

¹Note: The source representation of this terminology binding on code in PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier [DH2019g] is as an optional slice on the [coding](#) part of the code element. In the representation of the model presented in this specification it is normalised as a set of preferred bindings.

7.6 custodian (Organization with Mandatory Identifier)

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
Organization	A formally or informally recognized grouping of people or organizations formed for the purpose of achieving some form of collective action. Includes companies, institutions, corporations, departments, community groups, healthcare practice groups, etc.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	DomainResource	custodian[org]	
				custodian[org]/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				custodian[org]/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100002"	
				custodian[org]/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
				custodian[org]/assignedCustodian	
				custodian[org]/assignedCustodian/representedCustodianOrganization	
				custodian[org]/assignedCustodian/representedCustodianOrganization/id	See <id> for available attributes.
Organization > identifier	Identifier for the organization that is used to identify the organization across multiple disparate systems.	1..*	Identifier	custodian[org]/assignedCustodian/representedCustodianOrganization/ext:asEntityIdentifier	When sending to the My Health Record an HPI-O is expected. See <Entity Identifier> for available attributes. Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Identifier .
Organization > active	Whether the organization's record is still in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Organization > type	The kind(s) of organization that this is.	0..1	CodeableConcept	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Organization > name	A name associated with the organization.	0..1	string	custodian[org]/assignedCustodian/representedCustodianOrganization/ name	In CDA name and alias are represented by //represented-CustodianOrganization/name.
Organization > alias	A list of alternate names that the organization is known as, or was known as in the past.	0..*	string	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Organization > telecom	A contact detail for the organization.	0..*	ContactPoint	custodian[org]/assignedCustodian/representedCustodianOrganization/ telecom	In CDA the maximum occurrences of representedCustodianOrganization/telecom is 1. Although the model indicates that telecom is 0..*, in a CDA implementation this is limited to 0..1. telecom/@use is Organization Telecom Use HL7 V3 (required) . Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): ContactPoint .

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Organization > address	An address for the organization.	0..*	Address	custodian[org]/assignedCustodian/representedCustodianOrganization/addr	<p>addr/@use is Organization Address Use HL7 V3 (required).</p> <p>In CDA the maximum occurrences of representedCustodianOrganization/addr is 1. Although the model indicates that address is 0..*, in a CDA implementation this is limited to 0..1.</p> <p>Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Address Address as Australian Address.</p>
Organization > partOf	The organization of which this organization forms a part.	0..1	Reference(Organization as Base Organization)	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
CDA Header Data Elements					Context: /ClinicalDocument/
Organization > contact	Contact for the organization for a certain purpose.	0..*	BackboneElement	participant[org_contact]	participant[org_contact] SHALL conform to the template defined in participant (Organization contact) .

7.7 informant (Base Patient)

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements		Context: Comes from linking element			
Patient	Demographics and other administrative information about an individual receiving care or other health-related services.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	DomainResource	informant[pat]	The patient SHALL have at least: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • name (informant[pat]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/name), or • identifier(informant[pat]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier)
				informant[pat]/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				informant[pat]/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100051"	
				informant[pat]/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
				informant[pat]/assignedEntity	
				informant[pat]/assignedEntity/id	This SHALL hold the same value as /ClinicalDocument/recordTarget/patientRole/id.
				informant[pat]/assignedEntity/code	Optional CDA element.
				informant[pat]/assignedEntity/code/@code="ONESELF"	
				informant[pat]/assignedEntity/code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.111"	
				informant[pat]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson	
Patient > birthPlace	The registered place of birth of the patient. A system may use the address.text if they don't store the birthPlace address in discrete elements.	0..1	Address	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //patient/birthplace/place/addr.
Patient > indigenous-status	National Health Data Dictionary (NHDD) based indigenous status for a patient.	0..1	Coding	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //patient/ethnicGroupCode.
Patient > closing-the-gap-registration	Indication for eligibility for the Closing the Gap program.	0..1	boolean	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //entry[close_gap]/observation/value.
Patient > patient-mothersMaidenName	Mother's maiden (unmarried) name, commonly collected to help verify patient identity.	0..1	string	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //entry[mothers_name]/observation/value.
Patient > identifier	An identifier for this patient.	0..*	Identifier	informant[pat]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier	See Entity Identifier for available attributes. Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Identifier .
Patient > active	Whether this patient record is in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Patient > name	A name associated with the individual.	0..*	HumanName	informant[pat]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/ name	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): HumanName .
Patient > telecom	A contact detail (e.g. a telephone number or an email address) by which the individual may be contacted.	0..*	ContactPoint	informant[pat]/assignedEntity/ telecom	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): ContactPoint .
Patient > gender	Administrative Gender - the gender that the patient is considered to have for administration and record keeping purposes.	0..1	code	informant[pat]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/ ext:administrativeGenderCode	See <code> for available attributes. AdministrativeGender (required)
Patient > birthDate	The date of birth for the individual.	0..1	date	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //patient/birthTime.
Patient > deceased[x]	Indicates if the individual is deceased or not. Deceased date accuracy indicator is optional.	0..1	boolean dateTime	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //patient/ext:deceasedTime or //patient/ext:deceasedInd.
Patient > address	Addresses for the individual.	0..*	Address	informant[pat]/assignedEntity/ addr	When sending to the My Health Record this element is not expected to be sent. Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Address Address as Australian Address .
Patient > maritalStatus	This field contains a patient's most recent marital (civil) status.	0..1	CodeableConcept	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //patient/maritalStatusCode.
Patient > multipleBirth[x]	Indicates whether the patient is part of a multiple (bool) or indicates the actual birth order (integer).	0..1	boolean integer	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //patient/ext:multipleBirthInd or //patient/multiple-BirthOrderNumber.
Patient > contact	A contact party (e.g. guardian, partner, friend) for the patient.	0..*	BackboneElement	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Patient > communication	Languages which may be used to communicate with the patient about his or her health.	0..*	BackboneElement	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //patient/languageCommunication.
Patient > generalPractitioner	Patient's nominated care provider.	0..*	Reference(Organization as Base Organization Practitioner as Base Practitioner)	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Patient > managingOrganization	Organization that is the custodian of the patient record.	0..1	Reference(Organization as Base Organization)	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.

7.8 informant (Base RelatedPerson)

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
RelatedPerson	Information about a person that is involved in the care for a patient, but who is not the target of healthcare, nor has a formal responsibility in the care process.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	DomainResource	informant[rel_per]	The related person SHALL have at least: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • name (informant[rel_per]/relatedEntity/relatedPerson/name), or • identifier(informant[rel_per]/relatedEntity/relatedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier), or • relationship (informant[rel_per]/relatedEntity/relatedPerson/ext:personalRelationship)
				informant[rel_per]/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				informant[rel_per]/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100052"	
				informant[rel_per]/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
				informant[rel_per]/relatedEntity	
				informant[rel_per]/relatedEntity/@classCode="PRS"	
				informant[rel_per]/relatedEntity/code	Optional CDA element.
RelatedPerson > identifier	Identifier for a person within a particular scope.	0..*	Identifier	informant[rel_per]/relatedEntity/relatedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier	See <Entity Identifier> for available attributes. Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Identifier .
				n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
RelatedPerson > active	Whether this related person record is in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //patient.
RelatedPerson > patient	The patient this person is related to.	1..1	Reference(Patient as Base Patient)	n/a	See <Personal Relationship> for available attributes.
RelatedPerson > relationship	The nature of the relationship between a patient and the related person.	0..1	string	informant[rel_per]/relatedEntity/relatedPerson/ext:personalRelationship	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): HumanName .
RelatedPerson > name	A name associated with the person.	0..*	HumanName	informant[rel_per]/relatedEntity/relatedPerson/name	
RelatedPerson > telecom	A contact detail for the person, e.g. a telephone number or an email address.	0..*	ContactPoint	informant[rel_per]/relatedEntity/telecom	

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
RelatedPerson > gender	Administrative Gender - the gender that the person is considered to have for administration and record keeping purposes.	0..1	code	informant[rel_per]/relatedEntity/relatedPerson/ ext:administrativeGenderCode	See < code > for available attributes. AdministrativeGender (required)
RelatedPerson > birthDate	The date on which the related person was born.	0..1	date	informant[rel_per]/relatedEntity/relatedPerson/ ext:birthTime	See < time > for available attributes.
RelatedPerson > address	Address where the related person can be contacted or visited.	0..*	Address	informant[rel_per]/relatedEntity/ addr	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Address Address as Australian Address .
RelatedPerson > period	The period of time that this relationship is considered to be valid. If there are no dates defined, then the interval is unknown.	0..1	Period	informant[rel_per]/relatedEntity/relatedPerson/ ext:personalRelationship[related] / ext:effectiveTime	See < time > for available attributes.

7.9 informant (Base Practitioner)

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
Practitioner	A person who is directly or indirectly involved in the provisioning of healthcare.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	DomainResource	informant[prac]	The practitioner SHALL have at least: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • identifier (informant[prac]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier), or • name (informant[prac]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/name)
				informant[prac]/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				informant[prac]/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100053"	
				informant[prac]/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
				informant[prac]/assignedEntity	
				informant[prac]/assignedEntity/id	See <id> for available attributes.
				informant[prac]/assignedEntity/code	Optional CDA element. See <code> for available attributes.
				informant[prac]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson	Australian and New Zealand Standard Classification of Occupations (preferred)
Practitioner > identifier	An identifier that applies to this person in this role.	0..*	Identifier	informant[prac]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier	See <Entity Identifier> for available attributes. Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Identifier .
Practitioner > active	Whether this practitioner's record is in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Practitioner > name	The name(s) associated with the practitioner.	0..*	HumanName	informant[prac]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/name	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): HumanName .
Practitioner > telecom	A contact detail for the practitioner, e.g. a telephone number or an email address.	0..*	ContactPoint	informant[prac]/assignedEntity/telecom	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): ContactPoint .
Practitioner > address	Address(es) of the practitioner that are not role specific (typically home address). Work addresses are not typically entered in this property as they are usually role dependent.	0..*	Address	informant[prac]/assignedEntity/addr	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Address Address as Australian Address .

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Practitioner > gender	Administrative Gender - the gender that the person is considered to have for administration and record keeping purposes.	0..1	code	informant[prac]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/ ext:administrativeGenderCode	See <code> for available attributes. AdministrativeGender (required)
Practitioner > birthDate	The date of birth for the practitioner.	0..1	date	informant[prac]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/ ext:birthTime	See <time> for available attributes.
Practitioner > qualification	Qualifications obtained by training and certification.	0..*	BackboneElement	See: instantiation choices	<p>It is possible that the qualification may be able to be captured as a complex structure or as a text list.</p> <p>instantiation choices:</p> <p>If the qualification or list of qualifications is the result of capturing a text field then this element is expected to be as //ext:Qualifications/@classCode="QUAL". See <Qualification> for available attributes.</p> <p>If more information can be captured than a narrative list then this logical element is expected to be instantiated as ext:coverage2[prac_qual] and SHALL conform to the template defined in ext:coverage (Practitioner qualification).</p>
Practitioner > communication	A language the practitioner is able to use in patient communication.	0..*	CodeableConcept	informant[prac]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/ ext:languageCommunication	See <Language Communication> for available attributes.

7.10 performer (Base Patient)

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements		Context: Comes from linking element			
Patient	Demographics and other administrative information about an individual receiving care or other health-related services.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	DomainResource	performer[pat]	The patient SHALL have at least: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • name (performer[pat]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/name), or • identifier(performer[pat]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier)
				performer[pat]/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				performer[pat]/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100079"	
				performer[pat]/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
				performer[pat]/assignedEntity	Optional CDA element.
				performer[pat]/assignedEntity/@classCode="ASSIGNED"	
				performer[pat]/assignedEntity/id	
				performer[pat]/assignedEntity/code	Optional CDA element.
				performer[pat]/assignedEntity/code/@code="ONESELF"	
				performer[pat]/assignedEntity/code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.111"	
Patient > birthPlace	The registered place of birth of the patient. A system may use the address.text if they don't store the birthPlace address in discrete elements.	0..1	Address	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //patient/birthplace/place/addr.
Patient > indigenous-status	National Health Data Dictionary (NHDD) based indigenous status for a patient.	0..1	Coding	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //patient/ethnicGroupCode.
Patient > closing-the-gap-registration	Indication for eligibility for the Closing the Gap program.	0..1	boolean	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //entry[close_gap]/observation/value.
Patient > patient-mothersMaidenName	Mother's maiden (unmarried) name, commonly collected to help verify patient identity.	0..1	string	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //entry[mothers_name]/observation/value.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Patient > identifier	An identifier for this patient.	0..*	Identifier	perfomer[pat]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/ ext:asEntityIdentifier	See < Identifier > for available attributes. Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Identifier .
Patient > active	Whether this patient record is in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Patient > name	A name associated with the individual.	0..*	HumanName	perfomer[pat]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/ name	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): HumanName .
Patient > telecom	A contact detail (e.g. a telephone number or an email address) by which the individual may be contacted.	0..*	ContactPoint	perfomer[pat]/assignedEntity/ telecom	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): ContactPoint .
Patient > gender	Administrative Gender - the gender that the patient is considered to have for administration and record keeping purposes.	0..1	code	perfomer[pat]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/ ext:administrativeGenderCode	See < code > for available attributes. AdministrativeGender (required)
Patient > birthDate	The date of birth for the individual.	0..1	date	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //patient/birthTime.
Patient > deceased[x]	Indicates if the individual is deceased or not. Deceased date accuracy indicator is optional.	0..1	boolean dateTime	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //patient/ext:deceasedTime or //patient/ext:deceasedInd.
Patient > address	Addresses for the individual.	0..*	Address	perfomer[pat]/assignedEntity/ addr	When sending to the My Health Record this element is not expected to be sent. Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Address Address as Australian Address .
Patient > maritalStatus	This field contains a patient's most recent marital (civil) status.	0..1	CodeableConcept	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //patient/maritalStatusCode.
Patient > multipleBirth[x]	Indicates whether the patient is part of a multiple (bool) or indicates the actual birth order (integer).	0..1	boolean integer	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //patient/ext:multipleBirthInd or //patient/multiple-BirthOrderNumber.
Patient > contact	A contact party (e.g. guardian, partner, friend) for the patient.	0..*	BackboneElement	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Patient > communication	Languages which may be used to communicate with the patient about his or her health.	0..*	BackboneElement	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //patient/languageCommunication.
Patient > generalPractitioner	Patient's nominated care provider.	0..*	Reference(Organization as Base Organization Practitioner as Base Practitioner)	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Patient > managingOrganization	Organization that is the custodian of the patient record.	0..1	Reference(Organization as Base Organization)	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.

7.11 performer (Base Practitioner)

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
Practitioner	A person who is directly or indirectly involved in the provisioning of healthcare.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	DomainResource	performer[prac]	The practitioner SHALL have at least an identifier (performer[prac]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier) or a name (performer[prac]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/name).
				performer[prac]/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				performer[prac]/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100082"	
				performer[prac]/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
				performer[prac]/assignedEntity	
				performer[pat]/assignedEntity/@classCode="ASSIGNED"	Optional CDA element.
				performer[prac]/assignedEntity/id	Optional CDA element. See <id> for available attributes.
				performer[prac]/assignedEntity/code	Optional CDA element. See <code> for available attributes.
				performer[prac]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson	Australian and New Zealand Standard Classification of Occupations (preferred)
Practitioner > identifier	An identifier that applies to this person in this role.	0..*	Identifier	performer[prac]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier	See <Entity Identifier> for available attributes. Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Identifier .
Practitioner > active	Whether this practitioner's record is in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Practitioner > name	The name(s) associated with the practitioner.	0..*	HumanName	performer[prac]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/name	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): HumanName .
Practitioner > telecom	A contact detail for the practitioner, e.g. a telephone number or an email address.	0..*	ContactPoint	performer[prac]/assignedEntity/telecom	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): ContactPoint .
Practitioner > address	Address(es) of the practitioner that are not role specific (typically home address). Work addresses are not typically entered in this property as they are usually role dependent.	0..*	Address	performer[prac]/assignedEntity/addr	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Address Address as Australian Address .

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Practitioner > gender	Administrative Gender - the gender that the person is considered to have for administration and record keeping purposes.	0..1	code	performer[prac]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/ ext:administrativeGenderCode	See <code> for available attributes. AdministrativeGender (required)
Practitioner > birthDate	The date of birth for the practitioner.	0..1	date	performer[prac]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/ ext:birthTime	See <time> for available attributes.
Practitioner > qualification	Qualifications obtained by training and certification.	0..*	BackboneElement	See: instantiation choices	<p>It is possible that the qualification may be able to be captured as a complex structure or as a text list.</p> <p>instantiation choices:</p> <p>If the qualification or list of qualifications is the result of capturing a text field then this element is expected to be as //ext:Qualifications/@classCode="QUAL". See <Qualification> for available attributes.</p> <p>If more information can be captured than a narrative list then this logical element is expected to be instantiated as ext:coverage2[prac_qual] and SHALL conform to the template defined in ext:coverage (Practitioner qualification).</p>
Practitioner > communication	A language the practitioner is able to use in patient communication.	0..*	CodeableConcept	performer[prac]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/ ext:languageCommunication	See <Language Communication> for available attributes.

7.12 performer (Base RelatedPerson)

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
RelatedPerson Information about a person that is involved in the care for a patient, but who is not the target of healthcare, nor has a formal responsibility in the care process.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	DomainResource		performer[rel_per]	The related person SHALL have at least a name (performer[rel_per]/relatedEntity/relatedPerson/name), or an identifier (performer[rel_per]/relatedEntity/relatedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier), or a relationship (performer[rel_per]/relatedEntity/relatedPerson/ext:personalRelationship).
				performer[rel_per]/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				performer[rel_per]/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100080"	
				performer[rel_per]/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
				performer[rel_per]/assignedEntity	
				performer[rel_per]/assignedEntity/@classCode="ASSIGNED"	Optional CDA element.
				performer[org]/assignedEntity/id	Optional CDA element. See < id > for available attributes.
				performer[rel_per]/assignedEntity/code	Optional CDA element. See < code > for available attributes.
				performer[rel_per]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson	
RelatedPerson > identifier	Identifier for a person within a particular scope.	0..*	Identifier	performer[rel_per]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier	See < Entity Identifier > for available attributes. Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Identifier .
RelatedPerson > active	Whether this related person record is in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
RelatedPerson > patient	The patient this person is related to.	1..1	Reference(Patient as Base Patient)	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //patient.
RelatedPerson > relationship	The nature of the relationship between a patient and the related person.	0..1	string	performer[rel_per]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/ext:personalRelationship	See < Personal Relationship > for available attributes. Related Person Relationship Type (extensible)
RelatedPerson > name	A name associated with the person.	0..*	HumanName	performer[rel_per]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/name	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): HumanName .
RelatedPerson > telecom	A contact detail for the person, e.g. a telephone number or an email address.	0..*	ContactPoint	performer[rel_per]/assignedEntity/telecom	

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
RelatedPerson > gender	Administrative Gender - the gender that the person is considered to have for administration and record keeping purposes.	0..1	code	performer[rel_per]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/ ext:administrativeGenderCode	See < code > for available attributes. AdministrativeGender (required)
RelatedPerson > birthDate	The date on which the related person was born.	0..1	date	performer[rel_per]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/ ext:birthTime	See < time > for available attributes.
RelatedPerson > address	Address where the related person can be contacted or visited.	0..*	Address	performer[rel_per]/assignedEntity/ addr	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Address Address as Australian Address .
RelatedPerson > period	The period of time that this relationship is considered to be valid. If there are no dates defined, then the interval is unknown.	0..1	Period	performer[rel_per]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/ ext:personalRelationship[related] / ext:effectiveTime	See < time > for available attributes.

7.13 performer (Base Organization)

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: /ClinicalDocument/	
Organization	A formally or informally recognized grouping of people or organizations formed for the purpose of achieving some form of collective action. Includes companies, institutions, corporations, departments, community groups, healthcare practice groups, etc.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	DomainResource	performer[org]/	The organization SHALL have at least an identifier (performer[org]/ext:asEntityIdentifier) or a name (performer[org]/name).
				performer[org]/@typeCode	Optional CDA element.
				performer[org]/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				performer[org]/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100081"	
				performer[org]/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
				performer[org]/assignedEntity	
				performer[org]/assignedEntity/@classCode="ASSIGNED"	Optional CDA element.
				performer[org]/assignedEntity/id	Optional CDA element. See <id> for available attributes.
				performer[org]/assignedEntity/code	Optional CDA element. See <code> for available attributes.
				performer[org]/assignedEntity/representedOrganization	
Organization > identifier	Identifier for the organization that is used to identify the organization across multiple disparate systems.	0..*	Identifier	performer[org]/assignedEntity/representedOrganization/ext:asEntityIdentifier	See <Entity Identifier> for available attributes. Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Identifier .
Organization > active	Whether the organization's record is still in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Organization > type	The kind(s) of organization that this is.	0..1	CodeableConcept	performer[org]/assignedEntity/representedOrganization/standardIndustryClassCode	See <code> for available attributes. OrganizationType (example)
Organization > name	A name associated with the organization.	0..1	string	performer[org]/assignedEntity/representedOrganization/name	In CDA name and alias are represented by //representedOrganization/name.
Organization > alias	A list of alternate names that the organization is known as, or was known as in the past.	0..*	string	performer[org]/assignedEntity/representedOrganization/name	In CDA name and alias are represented by //representedOrganization/name.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Organization > telecom	A contact detail for the organization.	0..*	ContactPoint	performer[org]/assignedEntity/ telecom	telecom/@use is Organization Telecom Use HL7 V3 (required) . Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): ContactPoint .
Organization > address	An address for the organization.	0..*	Address	performer[org]/assignedEntity/ addr	addr/@use is Organization Address Use HL7 V3 (required) . Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Address Address as Australian Address .
Organization > partOf	The organization of which this organization forms a part.	0..1	Reference(Organization as Base Organization)	performer[org]/assignedEntity/representedOrganization/ asOrganizationPartOf performer[org]/assignedEntity/representedOrganization/ asOrganizationPartOf/wholeOrganization	The organization SHALL have at least a name (//wholeOrganization/name) or an identifier (//wholeOrganization/ext:asEntityIdentifier). Organization > partOf template is not currently defined.
CDA Header Data Elements					Context: /ClinicalDocument/
Organization > contact	Contact for the organization for a certain purpose.	0..*	BackboneElement	participant[org_contact]	participant[org_contact] SHALL conform to the template defined in participant (Organization contact) .

7.14 author (Base Patient)

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements		Context: Comes from linking elements			
Patient	Demographics and other administrative information about an individual receiving care or other health-related services.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	DomainResource	author[pat]	
				author[pat]/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				author[pat]/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100084"	
				author[pat]/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
				author[pat]/assignedAuthor/id	
				author[pat]/assignedAuthor/code	
				author[pat]/assignedAuthor/code/@code="ONESELF"	
				author[pat]/assignedAuthor/code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.111"	
				author[pat]/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson	
Patient > birthPlace	The registered place of birth of the patient. A system may use the address.text if they don't store the birthPlace address in discrete elements.	0..1	Address	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //recordTarget/patientRole/patient/birthPlace/place/addr.
Patient > indigenous-status	National Health Data Dictionary (NHDD) based indigenous status for a patient.	0..1	Coding	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //recordTarget/patientRole/patient/ethnicGroupCode.
Patient > closing-the-gap-registration	Indication for eligibility for the Closing the Gap program.	0..1	boolean	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //entry[close_gap]/observation/value.
Patient > patient-mothersMaiden-Name	Mother's maiden (unmarried) name, commonly collected to help verify patient identity.	0..1	string	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //entry[mothers_name]/observation/value.
Patient > identifier	An identifier for this patient.	0..*	Identifier	author[pat]/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier	See < Entity Identifier > for available attributes. Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Identifier .
Patient > active	Whether this patient record is in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Patient > name	A name associated with the individual.	0..*	HumanName	author[pat]/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson/name	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): HumanName .
Patient > telecom	A contact detail (e.g. a telephone number or an email address) by which the individual may be contacted.	0..*	ContactPoint	author[pat]/assignedAuthor/telecom	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): ContactPoint .
Patient > gender	Administrative Gender - the gender that the patient is considered to have for administration and record keeping purposes.	0..1	code	author[pat]/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson/ext:administrativeGenderCode	See < code > for available attributes. AdministrativeGender (required)

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Patient > birthDate	The date of birth for the individual.	0..1	date	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //recordTarget/patientRole/patient/birthTime.
Patient > deceased[x]	Indicates if the individual is deceased or not. Deceased date accuracy indicator is optional.	0..1	boolean dateTime	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //recordTarget/patientRole/patient/ext:deceasedTime or //recordTarget/patientRole/patient/ext:deceasedInd.
Patient > address	Addresses for the individual.	0..*	Address	author[pat]/assignedAuthor/addr	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Address .
Patient > maritalStatus	This field contains a patient's most recent marital (civil) status.	0..1	CodeableConcept	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //recordTarget/patientRole/patient/maritalStatusCode.
Patient > multipleBirth[x]	Indicates whether the patient is part of a multiple (bool) or indicates the actual birth order (integer).	0..1	boolean integer	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //recordTarget/patientRole/patient/ext:multipleBirthInd or //recordTarget/patientRole/patient/multipleBirthOrderNumber.
Patient > contact	A contact party (e.g. guardian, partner, friend) for the patient.	0..*	BackboneElement	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Patient > communication	Languages which may be used to communicate with the patient about his or her health.	0..*	BackboneElement	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //recordTarget/patientRole/patient/languageCommunication.
Patient > generalPractitioner	Patient's nominated care provider.	0..*	Reference(Organization as Base Organization Practitioner as Base Practitioner)	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Patient > managingOrganization	Organization that is the custodian of the patient record.	0..1	Reference(Organization as Base Organization)	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.

7.15 author (Base PractitionerRole)

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
PractitionerRole	A specific set of Roles/Locations/specialties/services that a practitioner may perform at an organization for a period of time.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	DomainResource	author[prac_rol]	
				author[prac_rol]/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				author[prac_rol]/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100085"	
				author[prac_rol]/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
				author[prac_rol]/assignedAuthor	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				author[prac_rol]/assignedAuthor/id	
PractitionerRole > identifier	Business identifiers for practitioner in a role.	0..*	Identifier	author[prac_rol]/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier	In CDA the identifier for both PractitionerRole and Practitioner for an author participation are expected to be included in //assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier. See Entity Identifier for available attributes. Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Identifier .
PractitionerRole > active	Whether this practitioner's record is in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Practitioner > period	The period during which the person is authorized to act as a practitioner in these role(s) for the organization.	0..1	Period	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
PractitionerRole > practitioner	Practitioner that is able to provide the defined services for the organization.	1..1	DomainResource	author[prac_rol]/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson	assignedPerson SHALL conform to the template defined in assignedPerson (Base Practitioner) .
PractitionerRole > organization	The organization where the Practitioner performs the roles associated.	0..1	Reference(Organization as Base Organization)	author[prac_rol]/assignedAuthor/representedOrganization	representedOrganization SHALL conform to the template defined in representedOrganization (Base Organization) .
PractitionerRole > code	Roles which this practitioner is authorized to perform for the organization.	0..*	code	author[prac_rol]/assignedAuthor/code	A code equivalent to the provider's professional role, e.g. 159011008 Community pharmacist is expected. See code for available attributes. Australian and New Zealand Standard Classification of Occupations (preferred) or Practitioner Role (preferred) ¹
PractitionerRole > specialty	Specific specialty of the practitioner.	0..*	code	n/a	specialty is not currently mapped.
PractitionerRole > location	The location(s) at which this practitioner provides care.	0..*	Reference(Location)	n/a	location is not currently mapped.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
PractitionerRole > healthcareService	The list of healthcare services that this worker provides for this role's Organization/Location(s).	0..*	Reference(Health-careService)	n/a	healthcareService is not currently mapped.
PractitionerRole > telecom	Contact details that are specific to the role/location/service.	0..*	ContactPoint	author[prac_rol]/assignedAuthor/telecom	In CDA the telecom for both PractitionerRole and Practitioner for an author participation are expected to be included in //assignedAuthor/telecom. Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): ContactPoint .
PractitionerRole > availableTime	A collection of times that the Service Site is available.	0..*	BackboneElement	n/a	availableTime is not currently mapped.
PractitionerRole > notAvailable	The HealthcareService is not available during this period of time due to the provided reason.	0..*	string	n/a	notAvailable is not currently mapped.
PractitionerRole > availabilityExceptions	A description of site availability exceptions, e.g. public holiday availability. Succinctly describing all possible exceptions to normal site availability as details in the available Times and not available Times.	0..1	CodeableConcept	n/a	availabilityExceptions is not currently mapped.

¹Note: The source representation of this terminology binding on code in PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier [DH2019g] is as an optional slice on the [coding](#) part of the code element. In the representation of the model presented in this specification it is normalised as a set of preferred bindings.

7.16 author (Base RelatedPerson)

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
RelatedPerson	Information about a person that is involved in the care for a patient, but who is not the target of healthcare, nor has a formal responsibility in the care process.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	DomainResource	author[rel_per]	
				author[rel_per]/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				author[rel_per]/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100083"	
				author[rel_per]/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
				author[rel_per]/assignedAuthor	
				author[rel_per]/assignedAuthor/id	Optional CDA element. See <id> for available attributes.
				author[rel_per]/assignedAuthor/code	
				author[rel_per]/assignedAuthor/code/@code="AGNT"	
				author[rel_per]/assignedAuthor/code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.110"	
				author[rel_per]/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson	
RelatedPerson > identifier	Identifier for a person within a particular scope.	0..*	Identifier	author[rel_per]/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier	See <Entity Identifier> for available attributes. Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Identifier .
RelatedPerson > active	Whether this related person record is in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
RelatedPerson > patient	The patient this person is related to.	1..1	Reference(Patient as Base Patient)	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //recordTarget/patientRole/patient.
RelatedPerson > relationship	The nature of the relationship between a patient and the related person.	0..1	CodeableConcept	author[rel_per]/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson/ext:personalRelationship	Related Person Relationship Type (extensible) See <Personal Relationship> for available attributes.
RelatedPerson > name	A name associated with the person.	0..*	HumanName	author[rel_per]/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson/name	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): HumanName .
RelatedPerson > telecom	A contact detail for the person, e.g. a telephone number or an email address.	0..*	ContactPoint	author[rel_per]/assignedAuthor/telecom	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): ContactPoint .
RelatedPerson > gender	Administrative Gender - the gender that the person is considered to have for administration and record keeping purposes.	0..1	code	author[rel_per]/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson/ext:administrativeGenderCode	See <code> for available attributes. AdministrativeGender (required)
RelatedPerson > birthDate	The date on which the related person was born.	0..1	date	author[rel_per]/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson/ext:birthTime	See <time> for available attributes.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
RelatedPerson > address	Address where the related person can be contacted or visited.	0..*	Address	author[rel_per]/assignedAuthor/ addr	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Address .
RelatedPerson > period	The period of time that this relationship is considered to be valid. If there are no dates defined, then the interval is unknown.	0..1	Period	author[rel_per]/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson/ext:personalRelationship[related]/ext:effectiveTime	See <time> for available attributes.

8 Entity CDA templates

This chapter contains mapping from the Individual (e.g. Patient with Mandatory Identifier) and Entity (e.g. Organization with Mandatory Identifier) models to CDA entity classes, expressed as a series of CDA templates that describe how each CDA entity is composed.

CDA templates are expected to be reused from one document type (or Composition model) to another. Each CDA template is presented under a heading in the format of "CDA schema element" ("model name") where "CDA schema element" is the root element for a CDA template and "model name" is the name of a model that constrains an element in the Event Summary hierarchy.

8.1 providerOrganization (Base Organization)

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements		Context: Comes from linking elements			
Organization	A formally or informally recognized grouping of people or organizations formed for the purpose of achieving some form of collective action. Includes companies, institutions, corporations, departments, community groups, healthcare practice groups, etc.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	DomainResource	providerOrganization[manag_org]	The organization SHALL have at least: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• identifier (providerOrganization[manag_org]/ext:asEntityIdentifier), or• name (providerOrganization[manag_org]/name)
				providerOrganization[manag_org]/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				providerOrganization[manag_org]/templateId/@root= "1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100034"	
				providerOrganization[manag_org]/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
				providerOrganization[manag_org]/id	Optional CDA element. See <id> for available attributes.
Organization > identifier	Identifier for the organization that is used to identify the organization across multiple disparate systems.	0..*	Identifier	providerOrganization[manag_org]/ext:asEntityIdentifier	See <Entity Identifier> for available attributes. Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Identifier .
Organization > active	Whether the organization's record is still in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Organization > type	The kind(s) of organization that this is.	0..1	CodeableConcept	providerOrganization[manag_org]/standardIndustryClassCode	See <code> for available attributes. OrganizationType (example)

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Organization > name	A name associated with the organization.	0..1	string	providerOrganization[manag_org]/name	In CDA name and alias are represented by //representedOrganization/name.
Organization > alias	A list of alternate names that the organization is known as, or was known as in the past.	0..*	string	providerOrganization[manag_org]/name	In CDA name and alias are represented by //representedOrganization/name.
Organization > telecom	A contact detail for the organization.	0..*	ContactPoint	providerOrganization[manag_org]/telecom	telecom/@use is Organization Telecom Use HL7 V3 (required) . Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): ContactPoint .
Organization > address	An address for the organization.	0..*	Address	providerOrganization[manag_org]/addr	addr/@use is Organization Address Use HL7 V3 (required) . Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Address Address as Australian Address .
Organization > partOf	The organization of which this organization forms a part.	0..1	Reference(Organization as Base Organization)	providerOrganization[manag_org]/asOrganizationPartOf providerOrganization[manag_org]/asOrganizationPartOf/wholeOrganization	The organization SHALL have at least: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• name (//wholeOrganization/name), or• identifier (//wholeOrganization/ext:asEntityIdentifier) Organization > partOf template is not currently defined.
CDA Header Data Elements				Context: /ClinicalDocument/	
Organization > contact	Contact for the organization for a certain purpose.	0..*	BackboneElement	participant[org_contact]	participant[org_contact] SHALL conform to the template defined in participant (Organization contact).

8.2 participant (Organization contact)

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements				Context: /ClinicalDocument/	
Organization > contact	Contact for the organization for a certain purpose.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	BackboneElement	participant[org_contact]	
				participant[org_contact]/@typeCode="IND"	
				participant[org_contact]/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				participant[org_contact]/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100035"	
				participant[org_contact]/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
				participant[org_contact]/associatedEntity	
				participant[org_contact]/associatedEntity/@classCode="CON"	
				participant[org_contact]/associatedEntity/scopingOrganization	
				participant[org_contact]/associatedEntity/scopingOrganization/@classCode="ORG"	Optional CDA element.
				participant[org_contact]/associatedEntity/scopingOrganization/id	Organization > contact is represented in CDA by a participant that is scoped by the Organization for which they are a contact. This SHALL hold the same value as the organization this is a contact for (the value in this id element SHALL be present in a separate participation).
Organization > contact > purpose	Indicates a purpose for which the contact can be reached.	0..1	CodeableConcept	participant[org_contact]/associatedEntity/code	See code for available attributes. ContactEntityType (extensible)
Organization > contact > name	A name associated with the contact.	0..1	HumanName	participant[org_contact]/associatedEntity/associatedPerson	
				participant[org_contact]/associatedEntity/associatedPerson/name	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): HumanName .
Organization > contact > telecom	A contact detail (e.g. a telephone number or an email address) by which the party may be contacted.	0..*	ContactPoint	participant[org_contact]/associatedEntity/telecom	telecom/@use is Organization Telecom Use HL7 V3 (required) . Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): ContactPoint .
Organization > contact > address	Visiting or postal addresses for the contact.	0..1	Address	participant[org_contact]/associatedEntity/addr	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Address Address as Australian Address .

8.3 representedOrganization (Base Organization)

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements					Context: Comes from linking elements
Organization	A formally or informally recognized grouping of people or organizations formed for the purpose of achieving some form of collective action. Includes companies, institutions, corporations, departments, community groups, healthcare practice groups, etc.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	DomainResource	representedOrganization	The organization SHALL have at least: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • name (//representedOrganization/name), or • identifier (//representedOrganization/ext:asEntityIdentifier)
				representedOrganization/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				representedOrganization/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100039"	
				representedOrganization/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
				representedOrganization/id	Optional CDA element. See < id > for available attributes.
Organization > identifier	Identifier for the organization that is used to identify the organization across multiple disparate systems.	0..*	Identifier	representedOrganization/ext:asEntityIdentifier	See < Entity Identifier > for available attributes. Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Identifier .
Organization > active	Whether the organization's record is still in active use.	0..1	boolean	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Organization > type	The kind(s) of organization that this is.	0..1	CodeableConcept	representedOrganization/standardIndustryClassCode	See < code > for available attributes. OrganizationType (example)
Organization > name	A name associated with the organization.	0..1	string	representedOrganization/name	In CDA name and alias are represented by //representedOrganization/name.
Organization > alias	A list of alternate names that the organization is known as, or was known as in the past.	0..*	string	representedOrganization/name	In CDA name and alias are represented by //representedOrganization/name.
Organization > telecom	A contact detail for the organization.	0..*	ContactPoint	representedOrganization/telecom	telecom/@use is Organization Telecom Use HL7 V3 (required) . Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): ContactPoint .
Organization > address	An address for the organization.	0..*	Address	representedOrganization/addr	addr/@use is Organization Address Use HL7 V3 (required) . Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Address Address as Australian Address .

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Organization > partOf	The organization of which this organization forms a part.	0..1	Reference(Organization as Organization Base)	representedOrganization/asOrganizationPartOf	The organization SHALL have at least: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • name (//wholeOrganization/name), or • identifier (//wholeOrganization/ext:asEntityIdentifier) Organization > partOf template is not currently defined.
				representedOrganization/asOrganizationPartOf/wholeOrganization	
CDA Header Data Elements				Context: /ClinicalDocument/	
Organization > contact	Contact for the organization for a certain purpose.	0..*	BackboneElement	participant[org_contact]	participant[org_contact] SHALL conform to the template defined in participant (Organization contact) .

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Practitioner > qualification	Qualifications obtained by training and certification.	0..*	BackboneElement	See: instantiation choices	<p>It is possible that the qualification may be able to be captured as a complex structure or as a text list.</p> <p>instantiation choices:</p> <p>If the qualification or list of qualifications is the result of capturing a text field then this element is expected to be as //assignedPerson[prac]/ext:Qualifications/@classCode="QUAL". See <Qualification> for available attributes.</p> <p>If more information can be captured than a narrative list then this logical element is expected to be instantiated as ext:coverage2[prac_qual] and SHALL conform to the template defined in ext:coverage (Practitioner qualification).</p>
Practitioner > communication	A language the practitioner is able to use in patient communication.	0..*	CodeableConcept	assignedPerson[prac]/ext:languageCommunication	See <Language Communication> for available attributes.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Practitioner > qualification	Qualifications obtained by training and certification.	0..*	BackboneElement	See: instantiation choices	<p>It is possible that the qualification may be able to be captured as a complex structure or as a text list.</p> <p>instantiation choices:</p> <p>If the qualification or list of qualifications is the result of capturing a text field then this element is expected to be as //assignedPerson[prac]/ext:Qualifications/@classCode="QUAL". See <Qualification> for available attributes.</p> <p>If more information can be captured than a narrative list then this logical element is expected to be instantiated as ext:coverage2[prac_qual] and SHALL conform to the template defined in ext:coverage (Practitioner qualification).</p>
Practitioner > communication	A language the practitioner is able to use in patient communication.	0..*	CodeableConcept	assignedPerson[prac]/ext:languageCommunication	See <Language Communication> for available attributes.

9 Section CDA templates

This chapter contains mapping from the section (e.g. Medications) models to CDA section classes, expressed as a series of CDA templates that describe how each CDA section is composed.

CDA templates are expected to be reused from one document type (or Composition model) to another. Each CDA template is presented under a heading in the format of "CDA schema element" ("model name") where "CDA schema element" is the root element for a CDA template and "model name" is the name of a model that constrains an element in the Event Summary hierarchy.

9.1 section (Event Overview)

Where an authoring system wants to include information that cannot be directly included the supported section entry the information may be included via a structure that is referenced from the supported section entry or by instantiating a child section to manage the additional information with a meaningful sub-section grouping

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
CDA Body Level 3 Data Elements		Comes from linking elements			
section	Summary information concerning the event.	1..1	BackboneElement	section	This section SHALL contain an encounter entry (/entry[enc]/encounter) that SHALL contain an encounter-description (/entry[enc]/encounter/text).
				section/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				section/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100059"	
				section/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
section > title	The label for this particular section. This will be part of the rendered content for the document, and is often used to build a table of contents.	1..1	string	section/title	
section > code	A code identifying the kind of content contained within the section. This must be consistent with the section title.	1..1	CodeableConcept	section/code	
				section/code/@code="101.16672"	
				section/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"	
				section/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName SHOULD be "NCTIS Data Components".
				section/code/@displayName	Optional CDA element. displayName SHOULD be "Event Overview".

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
section > text	A human-readable narrative that contains the attested content of the section, used to represent the content of the resource to a human. The narrative need not encode all the structured data, but is required to contain sufficient detail to make it 'clinically safe' for a human to just read the narrative.	1..1	narrative	section/text	See CDA narratives .
section > entry	A reference to the actual resource from which the narrative in the section is derived.	0..*	Reference(Encounter as Summary of an Encounter for an Event)	section/entry[enc]	
				section/entry[enc]/encounter	encounter SHALL conform to the template defined in encounter (Summary of an Encounter for an Event) .

9.2 section (Allergies)

For each section included, it is important to differentiate between affirmatively stating a patient does not have a specific condition (e.g. no latex allergy) versus not including findings in the record (e.g. not applicable or unknown):

- Where a sending system does not have any clinical data to provide in that section it is expected that emptyReason is used
- Where a sending system can state that a patient does not have an allergy or category of allergies it is expected that an allergy or intolerance observation is sent with the appropriate negation code (e.g. 716186003 |No known allergy|) is sent as the code

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
CDA Body Level 3 Data Elements		Context: Comes from linking elements			
section	Information about allergies or intolerances identified or reported during this encounter. This may include statements that a patient does not have an allergy or category of allergies.	1..1	BackboneElement	section	This section SHALL contain at least one entry (section/entry[adv]) or an emptyReason (section/@nullFlavor) but SHALL NOT contain both.
				section/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				section/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100069"	
				section/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
section > title	The label for this particular section. This will be part of the rendered content for the document, and is often used to build a table of contents.	1..1	string	section/title	
section > code	A code identifying the kind of content contained within the section. This must be consistent with the section title.	1..1	CodeableConcept	section/code	
				section/code/@code="48765-2"	
				section/code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"	
				section/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName SHOULD be "LOINC".
				section/code/@displayName	Optional CDA element. displayName SHOULD be "Allergies &or adverse reactions".
section > text	A human-readable narrative that contains the attested content of the section, used to represent the content of the resource to a human. The narrative need not encode all the structured data, but is required to contain sufficient detail to make it 'clinically safe' for a human to just read the narrative.	1..1	narrative	section/text	See CDA narratives .

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
section > entry	A reference to the actual resource from which the narrative in the section is derived.	0..*	Reference(AllergyIntolerance) as Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance	section/entry[adv]	A statement of allergy or intolerance can be sent to state that a patient does have an allergy or category of allergies or it can be sent to state that they do not e.g. 716186003 No known allergy 716184000 No known latex allergy . observation SHALL conform to the template defined in observation (Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance) .
				section/entry[adv]/observation	
section > emptyReason	If the section is empty, why the list is empty. An empty section typically has some text explaining the empty reason.	0..1	CodeableConcept	section/@nullFlavor	<p>Empty Reason HL7 v3 NullFlavor v2 (required)¹</p> <p>The nullFlavor attribute is used to represent the reason a section is empty of clinical content.</p>

¹Note: The source terminology binding on emptyReason in Allergies [DH2019g] and the terminology binding in the representation of the model in this specification are different. Mappings between the set of concepts are defined in [Non-Clinical Empty Reason \(HL7 FHIR\) to Empty Reason HL7 v3 NullFlavor](#) concept map.

9.3 section (Medications)

For each section included, it is important to differentiate between affirmatively stating a patient has no relevant findings (e.g. no current medications) versus not including findings in the record (e.g. not applicable or unknown):

- Where a sending system does not have any clinical data to provide in that section it is expected that emptyReason is used
- Where a sending system can state that a patient is known not to have current medications it is expected an observation of assertion of no relevant finding is sent with the appropriate code (e.g. 1234391000168107 |No known current medications|)

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
CDA Body Level 3 Data Elements		Comes from linking elements			
section	Information about medicines that are relevant to the encounter. The medicines included do not constitute a full medications list, but are those medicines that have specifically changed as a result of the encounter, or those medicines directly relevant to the encounter.	1..1	BackboneElement	section	This section SHALL contain an entry (section/entry[meds]) or an emptyReason (section/@nullFlavor) but SHALL NOT contain both.
				section/templatelid	This section SHALL contain at most one entry (section/entry[meds]) that conforms to observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding) ; that entry SHALL assert that there are no known current medications (/entry[meds]/observation/value/@code="1234391000168107").
				section/templatelid/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100061"	The use of templatelid signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				section/templatelid/@extension="1.0"	
				section/title	
section > title	The label for this particular section. This will be part of the rendered content for the document, and is often used to build a table of contents.	1..1	string	section/title	
section > code	A code identifying the kind of content contained within the section. This must be consistent with the section title.	1..1	CodeableConcept	section/code	
				section/code/@code="10160-0"	
				section/code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"	
				section/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName SHOULD be "LOINC".
				section/code/@displayName	Optional CDA element. displayName SHOULD be "History of Medication use Narrative".

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
section > text	A human-readable narrative that contains the attested content of the section, used to represent the content of the resource to a human. The narrative need not encode all the structured data, but is required to contain sufficient detail to make it 'clinically safe' for a human to just read the narrative.	1..1	narrative	section/text	See CDA narratives .
section > entry	A reference to the actual resource from which the narrative in the section is derived.	0..1	Reference(List as List of Medicine Changes from an Event Observation as Assertion of No Relevant Finding)	section/entry[meds]	instantiation choices:
				See: instantiation choices	If entry is a List then it is expected to be instantiated as //section/entry[meds]/act. act SHALL conform to the template defined in act (List of Medicine Changes from an Event) . If entry is an Observation then it is expected to be instantiated as //section/entry[meds]/observation. observation SHALL conform to the template defined in observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding) .
section > emptyReason	If the section is empty, why the list is empty. An empty section typically has some text explaining the empty reason.	0..1	CodeableConcept	section/@nullFlavor	Empty Reason HL7 v3 NullFlavor v2 (required)¹ The nullFlavor attribute is used to represent the reason a section is empty of clinical content.

¹Note: The source terminology binding on emptyReason in Medications [DH2019g] and the terminology binding in the representation of the model in this specification are different. Mappings between the set of concepts are defined in [Non-Clinical Empty Reason \(HL7 FHIR\) to Empty Reason HL7 v3 NullFlavor](#) concept map.

9.4 section (Medical History)

For each section included, it is important to differentiate between affirmatively stating a patient has no relevant findings (e.g. no relevant medical history) versus a finding that a patient does not have a specific condition versus not including findings in the record (e.g. not applicable or unknown):

- Where a sending system does not have any clinical data to provide in that section it is expected that emptyReason is used
- Where a sending system can state that a patient has no relevant history of findings it is expected an observation of assertion of no relevant finding is sent with the appropriate code (1224831000168103 | No relevant medical history|)
- Where a sending system cannot classify a coded entry as a procedure or a condition it is expected that the code is sent as a code in Condition
- Where a sending system cannot make classification as it has free text entry only, it is expected that the entry is sent as a free text in Condition
- Where a sending system can state that a patient does not have a specific condition or clinical finding it is expected that the appropriate negation code (e.g. 162023004 |No problem swallowing|) is sent as the code in Condition

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
CDA Body Level 3 Data Elements		Comes from linking elements			
section	Information about the problems, diagnoses and medical or surgical procedures of a patient. This can include statements that a patient does not have a particular condition.	1..1	BackboneElement	section	This section SHALL contain at least one entry (section/entry[med_hist]) or an emptyReason (section/@nullFlavor) but SHALL NOT contain both. This section SHALL NOT contain both entries (section/entry[med_hist]) that conform to observation (Summary Statement of Condition) or procedure (Summary Statement of Known Procedure) , and that conform to observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding) . This section SHALL contain at most one entry (section/entry[med_hist]) that conforms to observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding) ; that entry SHALL assert that there is no relevant medical history (//entry[med_hist]/observation/value/@code="1224831000168103").
				section/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				section/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100041"	
				section/templateId/@extension="1.0"	

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
section > title	The label for this particular section. This will be part of the rendered content for the document, and is often used to build a table of contents.	1..1	string	section/title="Medical History"	
section > code	A code identifying the kind of content contained within the section. This must be consistent with the section title.	1..1	CodeableConcept	section/code	
				section/code/@code="101.16117"	
				section/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"	
				section/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName SHOULD be "NCTIS Data Components".
				section/code/@displayName	Optional CDA element. displayName SHOULD be "Medical History".
section > text	A human-readable narrative that contains the attested content of the section, used to represent the content of the resource to a human. The narrative need not encode all the structured data, but is required to contain sufficient detail to make it 'clinically safe' for a human to just read the narrative.	1..1	narrative	section/text	See CDA narratives .
section > entry	A reference to the actual resource from which the narrative in the section is derived.	0..*	Reference (Condition as Summary Statement of Condition Procedure as Summary Statement of Known Procedure Observation as Assertion of No Relevant Finding)	section/entry[med_hist] See: instantiation choices	instantiation choices: If entry is a Condition then it is expected to be instantiated as //section/entry[med_hist]/observation. observation SHALL conform to the template defined in observation (Summary Statement of Condition) . If entry is a Procedure then it is expected to be instantiated as //section/entry[med_hist]/procedure. procedure SHALL conform to the template defined in procedure (Summary Statement of Known Procedure) . If entry is an Observation then it is expected to be instantiated as //section/entry[med_hist]/observation. observation SHALL conform to the template defined in observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding) .
section > emptyReason	If the section is empty, why the list is empty. An empty section typically has some text explaining the empty reason.	0..1	CodeableConcept	section/@nullFlavor	Empty Reason HL7 v3 NullFlavor v2 (required)¹ The nullFlavor attribute is used to represent the reason a section is empty of clinical content.

¹Note: The source terminology binding on emptyReason in Medical History [\[DH2019g\]](#) and the terminology binding in the representation of the model in this specification are different. Mappings between the set of concepts are defined in [Non-Clinical Empty Reason \(HL7 FHIR\) to Empty Reason HL7 v3 NullFlavor](#) concept map.

9.5 section (Immunisations)

For each section included, it is important to differentiate between affirmatively stating a patient has no relevant findings (e.g. no history of immunisation) versus not including findings in the record (e.g. not applicable or unknown):

- Where a sending system does not have any clinical data to provide in that section it is expected that emptyReason is used
- Where a sending system can state that a patient has no relevant history of findings it is expected an observation of assertion of no relevant finding is sent with the appropriate code (e.g. 1226591000168105 |No vaccine administered during encounter|).

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
CDA Body Level 3 Data Elements		Comes from linking elements			
section	Information about vaccinations administered or reported to be administered during this encounter. This may include statements that a patient has not had a particular vaccine administered.	1..1	BackboneElement	section	This section SHALL contain at least one entry (section/entry[imm]) or an emptyReason (section/@nullFlavor) but SHALL NOT contain both. This section SHALL NOT contain both entries (section/entry[imm]) that conform to substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Vaccine) and that conform to observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding) . This section SHALL contain at most one entry (section/entry[imm]) that conforms to observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding) ; that entry SHALL assert no history of vaccination (//entry[imm]/observation/value/@code="1234401000168109") or no vaccine administered during encounter (//entry[imm]/observation/value/@code="1226591000168105").
				section/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				section/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100058"	
				section/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
section > title	The label for this particular section. This will be part of the rendered content for the document, and is often used to build a table of contents.	1..1	string	section/title	

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
section > code	A code identifying the kind of content contained within the section. This must be consistent with the section title.	1..1	CodeableConcept	section/code	
				section/code/@code="11369-6"	
				section/code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"	
				section/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName SHOULD be "LOINC".
				section/code/@displayName	Optional CDA element. displayName SHOULD be "Immunization".
section > text	A human-readable narrative that contains the attested content of the section, used to represent the content of the resource to a human. The narrative need not encode all the structured data, but is required to contain sufficient detail to make it 'clinically safe' for a human to just read the narrative.	1..1	narrative	section/text	See CDA narratives .
section > entry	A reference to the actual resource from which the narrative in the section is derived.	0..*	Reference(Immuni-zation as Summary Statement of Vaccine Observation as Assertion of No Relevant Finding)	section/entry[imm]	instantiation choices: If entry is an Immunication then it is expected to be instantiated as //section/entry[imm]/substanceAdministration. substanceAdministration SHALL conform to the template defined in substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Vaccine) . If entry is an Observation then it is expected to be instantiated as //section/entry[imm]/observation. observation SHALL conform to the template defined in observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding) .
section > emptyReason	If the section is empty, why the list is empty. An empty section typically has some text explaining the empty reason.	0..1	CodeableConcept	section/@nullFlavor	Empty Reason HL7 v3 NullFlavor v2 (required)¹ The nullFlavor attribute is used to represent the reason a section is empty of clinical content.

¹Note: The source terminology binding on emptyReason in Immunisations [\[DH2019g\]](#) and the terminology binding in the representation of the model in this specification are different. Mappings between the set of concepts are defined in [Non-Clinical Empty Reason \(HL7 FHIR\) to Empty Reason HL7 v3 NullFlavor](#) concept map.

9.6 section (Diagnostic Investigations)

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
CDA Body Level 3 Data Elements				Comes from linking elements	
section	Information about diagnostic tests or procedures performed on or requested for an individual during this encounter, that are considered relevant to the individual's ongoing care. This does not include a full list of diagnostic tests and procedures performed on or request for the individual but only those that are relevant to the encounter.	1..1	BackboneElement	section	Editorial Note: The design of this section is incomplete. The intended structure of section.entry and section.emptyReason is not yet available. The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				section/templateId	
				section/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100060"	
				section/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
section > title	The label for this particular section. This will be part of the rendered content for the document, and is often used to build a table of contents.	1..1	string	section/title	
section > code	A code identifying the kind of content contained within the section. This must be consistent with the section title.	1..1	CodeableConcept	section/code	
				section/code/@code="30954-2"	
				section/code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"	
				section/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName SHOULD be "LOINC".
				section/code/@displayName	Optional CDA element. displayName SHOULD be "Relevant diagnostic tests & or laboratory data".
section > text	A human-readable narrative that contains the attested content of the section, used to represent the content of the resource to a human. The narrative need not encode all the structured data, but is required to contain sufficient detail to make it 'clinically safe' for a human to just read the narrative.	1..1	narrative	section/text	See CDA narratives .

10 Act CDA templates

This chapter contains mapping from the Composition (Event Summary) model and entry (e.g. Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance) models to CDA act classes, expressed as a series of CDA templates that describe how each CDA act is composed.

CDA templates are expected to be reused from one document type (or Composition model) to another. Each CDA template is presented under a heading in the format of "CDA schema element" ("model name") where "CDA schema element" is the root element for a CDA template and "model name" is the name of a model that constrains an element in the Event Summary hierarchy.

10.1 encompassingEncounter (Summary of an Encounter for an Event)

For each Summary of an Encounter for an Event included:

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements					
Encounter	An interaction between a patient and healthcare provider(s) for the purpose of providing healthcare service(s) or assessing the health status of a patient.	1..1	DomainResource	Context: /ClinicalDocument/	
				encompassingEncounter	
				encompassingEncounter/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				encompassingEncounter/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100064"	
				encompassingEncounter/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
				encompassingEncounter/id	See <id> for available attributes. This SHALL hold the same value as //encounter/id.
Encounter > encounter-description	Description, overview or summary of a clinical event and its reasons.	0..1	string	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in //encounter/text.
Encounter > status	planned arrived triaged in-progress onleave finished cancelled +.	1..1	code	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in //encounter/statusCode.
Encounter > class	inpatient outpatient ambulatory emergency +.	0..1	code	encompassingEncounter/code	See <code> for available attributes. ActEncounterCode (required) This SHALL hold the same value as //encounter/code.
Encounter > type	Specific type of encounter (e.g. e-mail consultation, surgical day-care, skilled nursing, rehabilitation).	0..*	CodeableConcept	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Encounter > subject	The patient or group present at the encounter.	0..1	Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in //ClinicalDocument/recordTarget/patientRole.
Encounter > period	The start and end time of the encounter.	1..1	Period	encompassingEncounter/effectiveTime	See <time> for available attributes. This SHALL hold the same value as //encounter/effectiveTime.
Encounter > reason	Reason the encounter takes place, expressed as a code. For admissions, this can be used for a coded admission diagnosis.	0..*	CodeableConcept	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in //encounter/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/value.

10.2 encounter (Summary of an Encounter for an Event)

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
Encounter	An interaction between a patient and healthcare provider(s) for the purpose of providing healthcare service(s) or assessing the health status of a patient.	1..1	DomainResource	encounter	This encounter provides further information from the same encounter that is captured in ClinicalDocument/componentOf/encompassingEncounter.
				encounter/@classCode="ENC"	
				encounter/@moodCode="EVN"	
				encounter/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				encounter/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100062"	
				encounter/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
				encounter/id	This element will hold the same value as encompassingEncounter/id. See <id> for available attributes.
Encounter > encounter-description	Description, overview or summary of a clinical event and its reasons.	0..1	string	encounter/text	
Encounter > status	planned arrived triaged in-progress onleave finished cancelled +.	1..1	code	encounter/statusCode	This CDA schema element is of type CodedSimpleValue (CS). Encounter Act Status HL7 V3 (required) ¹ //statusCode/@value SHOULD be "completed".
Encounter > class	inpatient outpatient ambulatory emergency +.	0..1	CodeableConcept	encounter/code	This element will hold the same value as encompassingEncounter/code. See <code> for available attributes. ActEncounterCode (required)

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Encounter > type	Specific type of encounter (e.g. e-mail consultation, surgical day-care, skilled nursing, rehabilitation).	0..*	code	encounter/entryRelationship[type] encounter/entryRelationship[type]/@typeCode="COMP" encounter/entryRelationship[type]/observation encounter/entryRelationship[type]/observation/@classCode="OBS" encounter/entryRelationship[type]/observation/@moodCode="EVN" encounter/entryRelationship[type]/observation/code encounter/entryRelationship[type]/observation/code/@code="103.17018" encounter/entryRelationship[type]/observation/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101" encounter/entryRelationship[type]/observation/code/@codeSystemName encounter/entryRelationship[type]/observation/code/@displayName encounter/entryRelationship[type]/observation/value	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName SHOULD be "NCTIS Data Components". displayName SHOULD be "Category". See <code> for available attributes. //value/@xsi:type SHALL be "CD". Encounter Type (preferred)
Encounter > subject	The patient or group present at the encounter.	0..1	Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in //ClinicalDocument/recordTarget/patientRole.
Encounter > period	The start and end time of the encounter.	1..1	Period	encounter/effectiveTime	This element will hold the same value as encompassingEncounter/effectiveTime. See <time> for available attributes.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Encounter > reason	Reason the encounter takes place, expressed as a code. For admissions, this can be used for a coded admission diagnosis.	0..*	CodeableConcept	encounter/entryRelationship[reason] encounter/entryRelationship[reason]/@typeCode="RSON" encounter/entryRelationship[reason]/observation encounter/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/@classCode="OBS" encounter/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/@moodCode="EVN" encounter/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/code encounter/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/code/@code="103.10141" encounter/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101" encounter/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/code/@displayName encounter/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/code/@codeSystemName encounter/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/statusCode/@code="completed" encounter/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/value	Optional CDA element. displayName SHOULD be "Clinical Indication". codeSystemName SHOULD be "NCTIS Data Components". See <code> for available attributes. //value/@xsi:type SHALL be "CD". Encounter Reason Codes (preferred)

¹Note: The source terminology binding on status in Summary of an Encounter for an Event [DH2019g](#) and the terminology binding in the representation of the model in this specification are different. Mappings between the set of concepts are defined in [EncounterStatus \(HL7 FHIR\) to Encounter Act Status HL7 v3](#) concept map.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
AllergyIntolerance > clinical-Status	The clinical status of the allergy or intolerance.	0..1	code	observation/entryRelationship[clin_status] observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/@typeCode="COMP" observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/@classCode="OBS" observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/@moodCode="EVN" observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/code observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/code/@code="103.32013" observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101" observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/code/@codeSystemName observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/code/@displayName observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/value	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName SHOULD be "NCTIS Data Components". displayName SHOULD be "Clinical Status". See code for available attributes. //value/@xsi:type SHALL be "CD". //value/@value SHOULD be "active". AllergyIntolerance Clinical Status (required)

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
AllergyIntolerance > verification-Status	Assertion about certainty associated with the propensity, or potential risk, of a reaction to the identified substance (including pharmaceutical product).	1..1	code	observation/entryRelationship[ver_status] observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/@typeCode="COMP" observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/@classCode="OBS" observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/@moodCode="EVN" observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/code observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/code/@code="103.32012" observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101" observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/code/@codeSystemName observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/code/@displayName observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/value	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName SHOULD be "NCTIS Data Components". displayName SHOULD be "Verification Status". See <code> for available attributes. //value/@xsi:type SHALL be "CD". //value/@value SHOULD be "unconfirmed" or "confirmed". AllergyIntolerance Verification Status (required)
AllergyIntolerance > type	Identification of the underlying physiological mechanism for the reaction risk.	0..1	code	observation/code	See <code> for available attributes. AllergyIntoleranceType (required)
AllergyIntolerance > code	Code for an allergy or intolerance statement (either a positive or a negated/excluded statement). This may be a code for a substance or pharmaceutical product that is considered to be responsible for the adverse reaction risk (e.g., 'Latex'), an allergy or intolerance condition (e.g., 'Latex allergy'), or a negated/excluded code for a specific substance or class (e.g., 'No latex allergy') or a general or categorical negated statement (e.g., 'No known allergy', 'No known drug allergies').	1..1	CodeableConcept	observation/value	See <code> for available attributes. //value/@xsi:type SHALL be "CD". Indicator of Hypersensitivity or Intolerance to Substance (preferred)¹
AllergyIntolerance > patient	The patient who has the allergy or intolerance.	1..1	Reference(Patient) as Patient with Mandatory Identifier	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in //ClinicalDocument/recordTarget/patientRole.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
AllergyIntolerance > onset[x]	Estimated or actual date, date-time, or age when allergy or intolerance was identified.	0..1	dateTime Age Period Range	See: instantiation choices	<p>See time for available attributes.</p> <p>instantiation choices:</p> <p>If onset[x] is a dateTime then it is expected to be instantiated as //observation/effectiveTime/low/@value.</p> <p>If onset[x] is an Age then it is expected to be instantiated as //observation/entryRelationship[onset]/observation/value. //value/@xsi:type SHALL be "PQ". The code for //observation/entryRelationship[onset]/observation/code SHALL be code/@code="445518008" and code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96".</p> <p>If onset[x] is a Period then it is expected to be instantiated as //observation/effectiveTime/low/@value.</p> <p>If onset[x] is a Range then it is expected to be instantiated as //observation/effectiveTime/low/@value.</p>
AllergyIntolerance > recorder	Individual who recorded the record and takes responsibility for its content.	0..1	Reference(Patient) as Base Patient Practitioner as Base Practitioner)	observation/author	<p>If this element is not instantiated the data is considered to be included via induction in //ClinicalDocument/author.</p> <p>In CDA an author (Practitioner) is part of authoring role (PractitionerRole).</p> <p>author SHALL conform to the template defined in author (Base Patient) or author (Base PractitionerRole).</p>

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
AllergyIntolerance > note	Additional narrative about the propensity for the Adverse Reaction, not captured in other fields.	0..*	Annotation	observation/entryRelationship[note]	
				observation/entryRelationship[note]/@typeCode="COMP"	Optional CDA element.
				observation/entryRelationship[note]/act	
				observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/@classCode="ACT"	
				observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/@moodCode="EVN"	
				observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/code	
				observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/@code="103.16044"	
				observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"	
				observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/@displayName	Optional CDA element. displayName SHOULD be "Additional Comments".
				observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName SHOULD be "NCTIS Data Components".
				observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/author	Optional CDA element. If this element is not instantiated the data is considered to be included via induction in //ClinicalDocument/author.
				observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/effectiveTime	Optional CDA element. See <time> for available attributes. If this element is not instantiated the data is considered to be included via induction in //ClinicalDocument/author.
				observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/text	//text/@xsi:type SHALL be "ST".

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
AllergyIntolerance > reaction	Details about each adverse reaction event linked to exposure to the identified substance.	0..*	BackboneElement	observation/entryRelationship[react] observation/entryRelationship[react]/@typeCode="COMP" observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/@classCode="OBS" observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/@moodCode="EVN" observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/code observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/code/@code="102.16474" observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101" observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/code/@codeSystemName observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/code/@displayName	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName SHOULD be "NCTIS Data Components". displayName SHOULD be "Reaction Event".
AllergyIntolerance > reaction > substance	Identification of the specific substance (or pharmaceutical product) considered to be responsible for the Adverse Reaction event. Note: the substance for a specific reaction may be different from the substance identified as the cause of the risk, but it must be consistent with it. For instance, it may be a more specific substance (e.g. a brand medication) or a composite product that includes the identified substance. It must be clinically safe to only process the 'code' and ignore the 'reaction.substance'.	0..1	CodeableConcept	observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/participant[agent] observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/participant[agent]/@typeCode="CAGNT" observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/participant[agent]/participantRole observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/participant[agent]/participantRole/playingEntity observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/participant[agent]/participantRole/playingEntity/code	See <code> for available attributes. Adverse Reaction Agent (preferred) ²
AllergyIntolerance > reaction > manifestation	Clinical symptoms and/or signs that are observed or associated with the adverse reaction event.	1..*	CodeableConcept	observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/entryRelationship[mfst] observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/entryRelationship[mfst]/@typeCode="MFST" observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/entryRelationship[mfst]/@inversionInd="true" observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/entryRelationship[mfst]/observation observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/entryRelationship[mfst]/observation/@classCode="OBS" observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/entryRelationship[mfst]/observation/@moodCode="EVN" observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/entryRelationship[mfst]/observation/code	See <code> for available attributes. Clinical Finding (preferred) ³

¹Note: The source representation of the terminology binding on code in Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance [DH2019g] is as an optional slice on the [coding](#) part of the code element. In the representation of the model presented in this specification it is normalised as a preferred binding.

²Note: The source representation of the terminology binding on substance in Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance [DH2019g] is as an optional slice on the [coding](#) part of the substance element. In the representation of the model presented in this specification it is normalised as a preferred binding.

³Note: The source representation of the terminology binding on manifestation in Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance [DH2019g] is as an optional slice on the [coding](#) part of the manifestation element. In the representation of the model presented in this specification it is normalised as a preferred binding.

10.4 act (List of Medicine Changes from an Event)

For each List of Medicine Changes from an Event included:

- It is expected that this list was produced during production of the event summary; and as such it is expected that list date holds the same value as Composition date
- All medicine items relevant to an event should be included in the list
- An existing unchanged medicine item should be represented with the flag of 'nochange' and no change-description
- A recommendation to make a change including cessation, prescription, or dose change should be represented with a recommendation flag, e.g. 'prescription-recommended' or 'review-recommended', and the change-description should describe the proposed change and reason for recommendation
- A medicine item introduced during this event should be represented with the flag of 'new' or 'prescribed' as appropriate, and a change-description supplied that provides the reason for introduction of the medicine item
- A change to a medicine item during this event should be represented with the flag of 'amended' and a change-description supplied that describes the change e.g. dose, form, route, frequency
- A medicine item ceased during this event should be represented with the flag of 'ceased', 'suspended', or 'cancelled' as appropriate, and a change-description supplied that provides the reason for ceasing the medicine item; if a medicine item is no longer actively taken as the prescribed course has been completed this should have the flag 'ceased'

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
List	A set of information summarized from a list of other resources.	1..1	DomainResource	act	
				act/@classCode="ACT"	
				act/@moodCode="EVN"	
				act/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				act/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100063"	
				act/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
List > status	Indicates the current state of this list.	1..1	code	act/statusCode	This CDA schema element is of type CodedSimpleValue (CS).
				act/statusCode/@code="active"	The logical status of "current" is mapped to "active" in CDA.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
List > code	This code defines the purpose of the list - why it was created.	1..1	CodeableConcept	act/code	See < code > for available attributes.
				act/code/@code="10160-0"	
				act/code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"	
				act/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName SHOULD be "LOINC".
				act/code/@displayName	Optional CDA element. displayName SHOULD be "History of Medication use Narrative".
List > subject	The common subject (or patient) of the resources that are in the list, if there is one.	1..1	Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in //ClinicalDocument/recordTarget/patientRole.
List > date	The date that the list was prepared.	0..1	dateTime	act/effectiveTime	See < time > for available attributes.
List > source	The entity responsible for deciding what the contents of the list were. Where the list was created by a human, this is the same as the author of the list.	1..1	Reference(Practitioner as Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)	act/author	This element will hold the same value as ClinicalDocument/author. In CDA an author (Practitioner) is part of composition-author-role (PractitionerRole). author SHALL conform to the template defined in author (PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier) .
List > entry	List of medicine type entries	1..*	BackboneElement	act/entryRelationship[item]	
List > entry > change-description	Description of a change including the reason for change.	0..1	string	//entryRelationship[flag]/observation/text	This element will provide the narrative to accompany the flag and may include reasons for stopping or introducing a medicine item, or describe the narrative of the change itself e.g. dose, form, route, frequency.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
List > entry > flag	The flag allows the system constructing the list to indicate the role and significance of the item in the list.	1..1	CodeableConcept	//entryRelationship[flag] //entryRelationship[flag]/@typeCode="SUBJ" //entryRelationship[flag]/@inversionInd="true" //entryRelationship[flag]/observation //entryRelationship[flag]/observation/@classCode="OBS" //entryRelationship[flag]/observation/@moodCode="EVN" //entryRelationship[flag]/observation/code //entryRelationship[flag]/observation/code/@code="288533004" //entryRelationship[flag]/observation/code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" //entryRelationship[flag]/observation/code/@displayName //entryRelationship[flag]/observation/code/@codeSystemName //entryRelationship[flag]/observation/value	See code for available attributes. The logical element flag (//entryRelationship[flag]) SHALL be instantiated as a direct child of the logical element item (i.e. //act/entryRelationship[item]). For example //act/entryRelationship[item]/substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[flag].
List > entry > item	A reference to the actual resource from which data was derived.	1..1	Reference(MedicationStatement as Summary Statement of Known Medicine)	act/entryRelationship[item] act/entryRelationship[item]/substanceAdministration	substanceAdministration SHALL conform to the template defined in substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Known Medicine) .

10.5 substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Known Medicine)

For each Summary Statement of Known Medicine included:

- It is expected that substanceAdministration/@moodCode will be 'EVN'
- MedicationStatement status should be consistent with the value of List flag:
 - A medicine item ceased during this event should be represented with a status of 'aborted' or 'cancelled' or 'completed'; including where a medicine item is no longer actively taken as the prescribed course has been completed
 - A medicine item introduced during this event should be represented with a status of 'new'
 - An existing unchanged medicine item should be represented with a status of 'active' or 'completed' depending if the patient is currently (active) taking the medicine item
 - An medicine item changed during this event should be represented with a status of 'active'
 - A recommendation to make a change may not directly result in a similar status unless it is a recommendation to introduce a medicine item. The status should represent the current state of the medicine item for the patient (active, completed, new) not the recommendation
- MedicationStatement taken should be consistent with the value of List flag:
 - A medicine item that has not yet been taken or has never been taken should be represented with taken 'n'
 - A medicine item the patient is currently taking or has taken should be represented with taken 'y'

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
MedicationStatement	A record of a medication that is being consumed by a patient. A MedicationStatement may indicate that the patient may be taking the medication now, or has taken the medication in the past or will be taking the medication in the future. The source of this information can be the patient, significant other (such as a family member or spouse), or a clinician. A common scenario where this information is captured is during the history taking process during a patient visit or stay. The medication information may come from sources such as the patient's memory, from a prescription bottle, or from a list of medications the patient, clinician or other party maintains. The primary difference between a medication statement and a medication administration is that the medication administration has complete administration information and is based on actual administration information from the person who administered the medication. A medication statement is often, if not always, less specific. There is no required date/time when the medication was administered, in fact we only know that a source has reported the patient is taking this medication, where details such as time, quantity, or rate or even medication product may be incomplete or missing or less precise. As stated earlier, the medication statement information may come from the patient's memory, from a prescription bottle or from a list of medications the patient, clinician or other party maintains. Medication administration is more formal and is not missing detailed information.	1..1	DomainResource	substanceAdministration	
				substanceAdministration/@classCode="SBADM"	
				substanceAdministration/@moodCode	SHALL NOT be "RQO".
				substanceAdministration/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				substanceAdministration/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100015"	
				substanceAdministration/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
MedicationStatement > status	A code representing the patient or other source's judgment about the state of the medication used that this statement is about. Generally this will be active or completed.	1..1	code	substanceAdministration/statusCode	This CDA schema element is of type CodedSimpleValue (CS). Medication Act Status HL7 V3 value set (required)

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
MedicationStatement > category	Indicates where type of medication statement and where the medication is expected to be consumed or administered.	0..1	CodeableConcept	substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[category] substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[category]/@typeCode="COMP" substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[category]/observation substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[category]/observation/@classCode="OBS" substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[category]/observation/@moodCode="EVN" substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[category]/observation/code substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[category]/observation/code/@code="276339004" substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[category]/observation/code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[category]/observation/code/@codeSystemName substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[category]/observation/code/@displayName substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[category]/observation/value	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName SHOULD be "SNOMED CT". displayName SHOULD be "Environment". See <code> for available attributes. //value/@xsi:type SHALL be "CD". MedicationStatementCategory (preferred)
MedicationStatement > medication[x]	Identifies the medication being administered. This is either a link to a resource representing the details of the medication or a simple attribute carrying a code that identifies the medication from a known list of medications.	1..1	CodeableConcept	substanceAdministration/consumable/manufacturedProduct/manufacturedMaterial/code	See <code> for available attributes. Australian Medication (example) MIMS Terminology (example) Australian Pharmaceutical Benefits Scheme Schedule Item (example) GTIN for Medicines (example) ¹ Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): CodeableConcept as a Medicine Item Code
MedicationStatement > informationSource	The person or organization that provided the information about the taking of this medication. Note: Use derivedFrom when a MedicationStatement is derived from other resources, e.g Claim or MedicationRequest.	0..1	Reference(RelatedPerson as Base RelatedPerson Patient as Base Patient Practitioner as Base Practitioner)	substanceAdministration/informant	informant SHALL conform to the template defined in informant (Base RelatedPerson) or informant (Base Patient) or informant (Base Practitioner) . If this element is not instantiated the data is considered to be included via induction in //ClinicalDocument/recordTarget.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
MedicationStatement > subject	The person, animal or group who is/was taking the medication.	1..1	Reference(Patient) as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in //ClinicalDocument/recordTarget/patientRole.
MedicationStatement > taken	Indicator of the certainty of whether the medication was taken by the patient.	1..1	code	See: instantiation choices	<p>This logical element may have a value of y n unk na as per MedicationStatementTaken (required)</p> <p>instantiation choices:</p> <p>When the logical assertion is 'y', there is no direct mapping into CDA as this is implicit in the instantiation of the substanceAdministration class.</p> <p>When the logical assertion is 'n', this is instantiated as //substanceAdministration/@negationInd="true" unless status is "new" in which case this is implicit in the statusCode; a negationInd SHALL NOT be present where substanceAdministration/statusCode is "new".</p> <p>When the logical assertion is 'unk' or 'na', this is instantiated as //substanceAdministration/@nullFlavor="UNK" or //substanceAdministration/@nullFlavor="NA" respectively.</p>
MedicationStatement > reason-Code	A reason for why the medication is being/was taken.	0..1	CodeableConcept	substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[reason]	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[reason]/@typeCode="RSON"	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[reason]/observation	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/@classCode="OBS"	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/@moodCode="EVN"	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/code	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/code/@code="103.10141"	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/code/@displayName	Optional CDA element. displayName SHOULD be "Clinical Indication".
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName SHOULD be "NCTIS Data Components".
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/value	See code for available attributes. //value/@xsi:type SHALL be "CD". Medication Reason Taken (preferred) ²

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
MedicationStatement > note	Provides extra information about the medication statement that is not conveyed by the other attributes.	0..*	Annotation	substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note] substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note]/@typeCode="COMP" substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note]/act substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note]/act/@classCode="ACT" substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note]/act/@moodCode="EVN" substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note]/act/code substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/@code="103.16044" substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101 substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/@displayName substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/@codeSystemName substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note]/act/author substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note]/act/effectiveTime substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note]/act/text	Optional CDA element. displayName SHOULD be "Additional Comments". codeSystemName SHOULD be "NCTIS Data Components". If this element is not instantiated the data is considered to be included via induction in //ClinicalDocument/author. If this element is not instantiated the data is considered to be included via induction in //ClinicalDocument/author. //text/@xsi:type SHALL be "ST".
MedicationStatement > dosage	Indicates how the medication is/was or should be taken by the patient.	1..1	Reference(Dosage as AU Base Dosage)	substanceAdministration/text	dosage SHALL at least include text or patient instructions instantiated as //substanceAdministration/text. Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Dosage .

¹Note: The source representation of the terminology binding on medication[x] in Summary Statement of Known Medicine [\[DH2019g\]](#) is as optional slices on the [coding](#) part of the medication[x] element. In the representation of the model presented in this specification it is normalised as example bindings.

²Note: The source representation of the terminology binding on reasonCode in Summary Statement of Known Medicine [\[DH2019g\]](#) is as an optional slice on the [coding](#) part of the reasonCode element. In the representation of the model presented in this specification it is normalised as a preferred binding.

10.6 observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding)

For each Assertion of No Relevant Finding included:

- It is expected that status will be 'final'

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements		Context: Context: Comes from linking elements			
Observation	Statement of clinical judgement that there are no items of specific interest after a reasonable investigation.	1..1	DomainResource	observation	
				observation/@classCode="OBS"	
				observation/@moodCode="EVN"	
				observation/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				observation/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100032"	
				observation/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
Observation > status	The status of the result value.	1..1	code	observation/entryRelationship[status]	
				observation/entryRelationship[status]/@typeCode="COMP"	Optional CDA element.
				observation/entryRelationship[status]/observation	
				observation/entryRelationship[status]/observation/@classCode="OBS"	
				observation/entryRelationship[status]/observation/@moodCode="EVN"	
				observation/entryRelationship[status]/observation/code	
				observation/entryRelationship[status]/observation/code/@code="103.32010"	
				observation/entryRelationship[status]/observation/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"	
				observation/entryRelationship[status]/observation/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName SHOULD be "NCTIS Data Components".
				observation/entryRelationship[status]/observation/code/@displayName	Optional CDA element. displayName SHOULD be "Observation Result Status".
				observation/entryRelationship[status]/observation/value	See code for available attributes. //value/@xsi:type SHALL be "CD". ObservationStatus (required)

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Observation > code	Describes what was observed. Sometimes this is called the observation 'name'.	1..1	CodeableConcept	observation/code	See < code > for available attributes.
				observation/code/@code="ASSERTION"	
				observation/code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4"	
				observation/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element. See < code > for available attributes.
				observation/code/@displayName	codeSystemName SHOULD be "v3 Code System ActCode". Optional CDA element. displayName SHOULD be "Assertion".
Observation > subject	The patient, or group of patients, location, or device whose characteristics (direct or indirect) are described by the observation and into whose record the observation is placed.	1..1	Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in //ClinicalDocument/recordTarget/patientRole.
Observation > effective[x]	The time or time-period the observed value is asserted as being true. For biological subjects - e.g. human patients - this is usually called the 'physiologically relevant time'. This is usually either the time of the procedure or of specimen collection, but very often the source of the date/time is not known, only the date/time itself.	0..1	dateTime Period	observation/effectiveTime	See < time > for available attributes.
Observation > performer	Who was responsible for asserting the observed value as 'true'.	0..*	Reference(Practitioner as Base Practitioner Organization as Base Organization RelatedPerson as Base RelatedPerson Patient as Base Patient)	observation/performer	performer SHALL conform to the template defined in performer (Base Practitioner) or performer (Base Organization) or performer (Base RelatedPerson) or performer (Base Patient) .
Observation > value[x]	The information determined as a result of making the observation, if the information has a simple value.	1..1	CodeableConcept	observation/value	//value/@xsi:type SHALL be "CD". //value/@nullFlavor SHALL NOT be instantiated. Assertion Of Absence value set (required)

10.7 substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Vaccine)

For each Summary Statement of Vaccine included:

- It is expected that status will be ‘completed’
- It is expected that primarySource will be ‘true’
- Where an authoring system does not have the dose status available as a distinct element it is expected that no data is sent.

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
Immunization	Describes the event of a patient being administered a vaccination or a record of a vaccination as reported by a patient, a clinician or another party and may include vaccine reaction information and what vaccination protocol was followed.	1..1	DomainResource	substanceAdministration	
				substanceAdministration/@classCode="SBADM"	
				substanceAdministration/@moodCode="EVN"	
				substanceAdministration/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				substanceAdministration/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100057"	
				substanceAdministration/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
Immunization > status	Indicates the current status of the vaccination event.	1..1	code	substanceAdministration/statusCode	This CDA schema element is of type CodedSimpleValue (CS). Immunization Act Status HL7 V3 (required)
Immunization > notGiven	Indicates if the vaccination was or was not given.	1..1	boolean	n/a	When the logical assertion is 'false', there is no direct mapping into CDA as this is implicit in the instantiation of the substanceAdministration class When the logical assertion is 'true', this is instantiated as //substanceAdministration/@negationInd="true".
Immunization > vaccineCode	Vaccine that was administered or was to be administered.	1..1	CodeableConcept	substanceAdministration/consumable	See code for available attributes. Australian Medicines Terminology Vaccine (preferred) Australian Immunisation Register Vaccine (preferred)¹
				substanceAdministration/consumable/manufacturedProduct	
				substanceAdministration/consumable/manufacturedProduct/manufacturedMaterial	
				substanceAdministration/consumable/manufacturedProduct/manufacturedMaterial/code	
Immunization > patient	The patient who either received or did not receive the immunization.	1..1	Reference(Patient) as Patient with Mandatory Identifier	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in //ClinicalDocument/recordTarget/patientRole.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Immunization > date	Date vaccine administered or was to be administered.	0..1	dateTime	substanceAdministration/effectiveTime	See < time > for available attributes.
Immunization > primarySource	An indication that the content of the record is based on information from the person who administered the vaccine. This reflects the context under which the data was originally recorded.	1..1	boolean	substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[prim_sour]	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[prim_sour]/typeCode="COMP"	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[prim_sour]/observation	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[prim_sour]/observation/@classCode="OBS"	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[prim_sour]/observation/@moodCode="EVN"	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[prim_sour]/observation/code	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[prim_sour]/observation/code/@code="103.17061"	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[prim_sour]/observation/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[prim_sour]/observation/code/@displayName	Optional CDA element. displayName SHOULD be "Information from a Primary Source".
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[prim_sour]/observation/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName SHOULD be "NCTIS Data Components".
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[prim_sour]/observation/value	The value is 'true' if the source of the information is a primary source. //value/@xsi:type SHALL be "BL".
Immunization > vaccinationProtocol	Contains information about the protocol(s) under which the vaccine was administered.	0..*	BackboneElement	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Immunization > vaccinationProtocol > doseSequence	Nominal position in a series.	0..1	positiveInt	substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[sply]/@typeCode="COMP"	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[sply]/sequenceNumber/@value	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[sply]/supply	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[sply]/supply/@classCode="SPLY"	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[sply]/supply/@moodCode="EVN"	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[sply]/supply/independentInd/@value="false"	
Immunization > vaccinationProtocol > doseStatus	Indicates if the immunization event should 'count' against the protocol.	1..1	CodeableConcept	substanceAdministration/text	Optional CDA element. This logical element, if available in the source system is expected to form part of //substanceAdministration/text.

¹Note: The source representation of this terminology binding on vaccineCode in Summary Statement of Vaccine [DH2019g] is as optional slices on the [coding](#) part of the vaccineCode element. In the representation of the model presented in this specification it is normalised as a set of preferred bindings.

²Note: The source representation of this terminology binding on vaccineCode in Summary Statement of Vaccine [DH2019g] is as optional slices on the [coding](#) part of the vaccineCode element. In the representation of the model presented in this specification it is normalised as a set of preferred bindings.

10.8 observation (Summary Statement of Condition)

For each Summary Statement of Condition included:

- It is expected that verificationStatus will be 'confirmed'
- It is expected that clinicalStatus will be 'active'
- A 'refuted' condition should be represented with an appropriate negation code and a verificationStatus of 'unconfirmed' or 'confirmed' depending on the level of certainty
- A 'refuted' condition should be represented with an appropriate negation code and a clinicalStatus of 'inactive'

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements					
Condition	A clinical condition, problem, diagnosis, or other event, situation, issue, or clinical concept that has risen to a level of concern.	1..1	DomainResource	observation	clinicalStatus (entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation) SHALL be instantiated if verificationStatus (entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation) is present and the value (value/@code) is not "entered-in-error". clinicalStatus SHALL be instantiated if abatement is present with the value of clinicalStatus (entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/value/@code) as "inactive", "resolved", or "remission".
				observation/@classCode="OBS"	
				observation/@moodCode="EVN"	
				observation/templatelid	The use of templatelid signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				observation/templatelid/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100054"	
				observation/templatelid/@extension="1.0"	
				observation/code	
				observation/code/@code="282291009"	
				observation/code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"	
				observation/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName SHOULD be "SNOMED CT".
				observation/code/@displayName	displayName SHOULD be "Diagnosis interpretation".

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Condition > recorder	Reference to an individual who recorded the condition and takes responsibility for its content.	0..1	Reference(Related-Person) as Base RelatedPerson Patient as Base Patient Practitioner as Base Practitioner)	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in //ClinicalDocument/author.
Condition > clinicalStatus	The clinical status of the condition.	0..1	code	observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/@typeCode="COMP"	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/@classCode="OBS"	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/@moodCode="EVN"	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/code	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/code/@code="103.32013"	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName SHOULD be "NCTIS Data Components".
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/code/@displayName	Optional CDA element. displayName SHOULD be "Clinical Status".
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/value	See <code> for available attributes. //value/@xsi:type SHALL be "CD". Condition Clinical Status Codes (required)

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Condition > verificationStatus	The verification status to support the clinical status of the condition.	0..1	code	observation/entryRelationship[ver_status] observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/@typeCode="COMP" observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/@classCode="OBS" observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/@moodCode="EVN" observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/code observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/code/@code="103.32012" observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101" observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/code/@codeSystemName observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/code/@displayName observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/value	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName SHOULD be "NCTIS Data Components". displayName SHOULD be "Verification Status". See <code> for available attributes. //value/@xsi:type SHALL be "CD". Condition Verification Status (required)
Condition > code	Identification of the condition, problem or diagnosis.	1..1	CodeableConcept	observation/value	See <code> for available attributes. //value/@xsi:type SHALL be "CD". Clinical Condition (preferred) ¹
Condition > subject	Indicates the patient or group who the condition record is associated with.	1..1	Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in //ClinicalDocument/recordTarget/patientRole.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Condition > onset[x]	Estimated or actual date or date-time the condition began, in the opinion of the clinician.	0..1	dateTime Age Period Range	See: instantiation choices	<p>See time for available attributes.</p> <p>instantiation choices:</p> <p>If onset[x] is a dateTime then it is expected to be instantiated as //observation/effectiveTime/low/@value.</p> <p>If onset[x] is an Age then it is expected to be instantiated as //observation/entryRelationship[onset]/observation/value. //value/@xsi:type SHALL be "PQ". The code for //observation/entryRelationship[onset]/observation/code SHALL be code/@code="445518008" and code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96".</p> <p>If onset[x] is a Period then it is expected to be instantiated as //observation/effectiveTime/low/@value.</p> <p>If onset[x] is a Range then it is expected to be instantiated as //observation/effectiveTime/low/@value.</p>
Condition > abatement[x]	The date or estimated date that the condition resolved or went into remission. This is called 'abatement' because of the many overloaded connotations associated with 'remission' or 'resolution' - Conditions are never really resolved, but they can abate.	0..1	dateTime Age boolean Period Range	See: instantiation choices	<p>See time for available attributes.</p> <p>instantiation choices:</p> <p>If abatement[x] is a dateTime then it is expected to be instantiated as //observation/effectiveTime/high/@value.</p> <p>If abatement[x] is an Age then it is expected to be instantiated as //observation/entryRelationship[abat]/observation/value. //value/@xsi:type SHALL be "PQ". The code for //observation/entryRelationship[abat]/observation/code SHALL be code/@code="1292971000168105" and code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96".</p> <p>If abatement[x] is a Period then it is expected to be instantiated as //observation/effectiveTime/high/@value.</p> <p>If abatement[x] is a Range then it is expected to be instantiated as //observation/effectiveTime/high/@value.</p>

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Condition > note	Additional information about the Condition. This is a general notes/comments entry for description of the Condition, its diagnosis and prognosis.	0..*	Annotation	observation/entryRelationship[note] observation/entryRelationship[note]/@typeCode="COMP" observation/entryRelationship[note]/act observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/@classCode="ACT" observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/@moodCode="EVN" observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/code observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/@code="103.16044" observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101" observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/@codeSystemName observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/@displayName observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/author observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/effectiveTime observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/text	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName SHOULD be "NCTIS Data Components". displayName SHOULD be "Additional Comments" If this element is not instantiated the data is considered to be included via induction in //ClinicalDocument/author. See <time> for available attributes. If this element is not instantiated the data is considered to be included via induction in //ClinicalDocument/author/time. //text/@xsi:type SHALL be "ST".

¹Note: The source representation of the terminology binding on code in Summary Statement of Condition [\[DH2019g\]](#) is as an optional slice on the [coding](#) part of the code element. In the representation of the model presented in this specification it is normalised as a preferred binding.

10.9 procedure (Summary Statement of Known Procedure)

For each Summary Statement of Known Procedure included:

- It is expected that status will be 'completed'

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements		Context: Context: Comes from linking elements			
Procedure	An action that is or was performed on a patient. This can be a physical intervention like an operation, or less invasive like counseling or hypnotherapy.	1..1	DomainResource	procedure	
				procedure/@classCode="PROC"	
				procedure/@moodCode="EVN"	
				procedure/ templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				procedure/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100055"	
				procedure/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
Procedure > status	A code specifying the state of the procedure. Generally this will be in-progress or completed state.	1..1	code	procedure/ statusCode	This CDA schema element is of type CodedSimpleValue (CS). Procedure Act Status HL7 V3 (required)
Procedure > code	The specific procedure that is performed. Use text if the exact nature of the procedure cannot be coded (e.g. 'Laparoscopic Appendectomy').	1..1	CodeableConcept	procedure/ code	See <code> for available attributes. Procedure (preferred) ¹
Procedure > subject	The person, animal or group on which the procedure was performed.	1..1	Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in //ClinicalDocument/recordTarget/patientRole.
Procedure > performed[x]	The date(time)/period over which the procedure was performed. Allows a period to support complex procedures that span more than one date, and also allows for the length of the procedure to be captured.	0..1	dateTime Period	procedure/ effectiveTime	See <time> for available attributes.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Procedure > note	Any other notes about the procedure. E.g. the operative notes.	0..*	Annotation	procedure/entryRelationship[note]	
				procedure/entryRelationship[note]/@typeCode="COMP"	Optional CDA element.
				procedure/entryRelationship[note]/act	
				procedure/entryRelationship[note]/act/@classCode="ACT"	
				procedure/entryRelationship[note]/act/@moodCode="EVN"	
				procedure/entryRelationship[note]/act/code	
				procedure/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/@code="103.16044"	
				procedure/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"	
				procedure/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/@displayName	Optional CDA element. displayName SHOULD be "Additional Comments".
				procedure/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName SHOULD be "NCTIS Data Components".
				procedure/entryRelationship[note]/act/author	Optional CDA element. If this element is not instantiated the data is considered to be included via induction in //ClinicalDocument/author.
				procedure/entryRelationship[note]/act/effectiveTime	Optional CDA element. See <time> for available attributes. If this element is not instantiated the data is considered to be included via induction in //ClinicalDocument/author.
				procedure/entryRelationship[note]/act/text	//text/@xsi:type SHALL be "ST".

¹Note: The source representation of the terminology binding on code in Summary Statement of Known Procedure [\[DH2019g\]](#) is as an optional slice on the [coding](#) part of the code element. In the representation of the model presented in this specification it is normalised as a preferred binding.

10.10 ext:coverage (Practitioner qualification)

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements					Context: /ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[admin_obs]/section/ See Administrative Observations .
Practitioner > qualification	Qualifications obtained by training and certification.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	BackboneElement	ext:coverage2[prac_qual]	
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/@typeCode="COVBY"	
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100038"	
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement	
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/@classCode="COV"	
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/@moodCode="EVN"	
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/ext:participant[prac]	
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/ext:participant[prac]/@typeCode="HLD"	
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/ext:participant[prac]/ext:participantRole	
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/ext:participant[prac]/ext:participantRole/@classCode="ASSIGNED"	Practitioner > qualification is represented in CDA by an entitlement (qualification) held by a participant (practitioner). This SHALL hold the same value as practitioner that this qualification is associated with (the value in this id element SHALL be present in separate participation).
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/ext:participant[prac]/ext:participantRole/ext:id	
Practitioner > qualification > identifier	An identifier that applies to this person's qualification in this role.	0..*	Identifier	ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/ext:id	
Practitioner > qualification > code	Coded representation of the qualification.	1..1	CodeableConcept	ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/ext:code	See <code> for available attributes. v2 table 0360, Version 2.7 (example)
Practitioner > qualification > period	Period during which the qualification is valid.	0..1	Period	ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/ext:effectiveTime	

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Practitioner > qualification > issuer	Organization that regulates and issues the qualification.	0..1	Reference(Organization as Base Organization)	ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/ext:participant[issuer]	<p>ext:participant[issuer]/@typeCode SHALL be "AUT".</p> <p>ext:participant[issuer]/ext:participantRole SHALL be "COMPAR".</p>

11 Common patterns

11.1 code

The <code> element pattern refines the kind of act being recorded. It is of data type CD CWE (Concept Descriptor, Coded With Extensibility). It may have:

- a null attribute (*nullFlavor*)
- *originalText*
- *code* and *codeSystem*
- *qualifier* (CD)
- *translation* (CD)
- any combination of the above.

A *displayName* is highly recommended.

Where used, the *code* attribute **SHALL** contain a code from the relevant vocabulary.

Where used, the *codeSystem* attribute **SHALL** contain the OID for the relevant vocabulary. Values for coding systems can be obtained from the HL7 OID registry accessible from the HL7 home web page at www.hl7.org.

Where used, the *displayName* attribute **SHALL** contain a human-readable description of the code value that is provided by the code system; *displayName* is a case insensitive value except where explicitly stated otherwise by the code system. A preferred interface term for display that is not a member of the description set supplied by the code system **SHALL NOT** be used to populate the *displayName* attribute.

The *codeSystemName* **MAY** be present and, where used, **SHALL** contain a human-readable name for the coding system.

Where used, the *originalText* element **SHALL** be used to carry the full text associated with this code as selected by, typed by or displayed to the author of this statement including the contents of the *qualifier* if present.

Where used, the *qualifier* element **SHALL** carry a code from the same code system as the code; for example if the main concept code is from SNOMED CT the *qualifier* also has to be taken from SNOMED CT as the use of a different code system for a *qualifier* is not allowed. The use of the *qualifier* element is governed by the code system used and cannot be used with code systems that do not provide for qualifiers (e.g. pre-coordinated systems).

Codes can be obtained from a variety of sources. Additional vocabularies are also available from the HL7 Version 3 Vocabulary tables, available to HL7 members through the HL7 web site. In some cases, the vocabularies have been specified; in others, a particular code has been fixed or there is no vocabulary specified. For guidance on coding common clinical concepts in CDA documents see [Representing Coding in CDA Documents Implementation Guidance \[NEHT2011bv\]](#).

Where a code is used from a different code system to that specified, or where the code lies outside the reference set specified, or where a code system or reference set is not specified, the code value **SHALL** be consistent with the meaning of the associated element of the Event Summary model.

If a vocabulary is specified in this implementation guide and no suitable code can be found, the *originalText* element **SHALL** be used to carry the full text as selected by, typed by or displayed to the author of this statement.

If a vocabulary is specified in this implementation guide and it is not possible to use this vocabulary, but an alternate vocabulary is in use, the *originalText* element **SHALL** be used to carry the full text as selected by, typed by or displayed to the author of this statement. The *code* element **SHALL** be used to carry the relevant information from the alternate vocabulary and the alternate vocabulary **SHALL** be registered with HL7 and allocated an appropriate OID.

If an alternate vocabulary is in use and a translation into the specified code system is available, the *originalText* element **SHALL** be used to carry the full text as selected by, typed by or displayed to the author of this statement. The *code* element **SHALL** be used to carry the relevant information from the alternate vocabulary and the alternate vocabulary **SHALL** be registered with HL7 and allocated an appropriate OID. The *translation* element **SHALL** be used to indicate the translation code from the specified vocabulary.

Example 11.1. code

```
<!-- Specified code system in use -->
<code
  code="271807003"
  codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
  codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
  codeSystemVersion="20101130"
  displayName="Skin rash" />

<!-- Specified code system in use with a qualifier -->
<code
  code="23986001"
  codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
  codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
  displayName="Glaucoma" >
  <originalText>Glaucoma, left</originalText>
  <qualifier>
    <name
      code="272741003"
      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.3883.6.96"
      codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
      displayName="Laterality" />
    <value
      code="7771000"
      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
      codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
      displayName="Left"
      xsi:type="CD" />
  </qualifier>
</code>
```

```
<!-- Alternate code system in use and a translation into the specified code system is available -->
<code
  code="J45.9"
  codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.135"
  codeSystemName="icd10am"
  displayName="Asthma, unspecified">
  <originalText>Asthma</originalText>
  <translation
    code="195967001"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
    codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
    displayName="Asthma"/>
</code>

<!-- Alternate code system in use and no translation into the specified code system is available -->
<code
  code="J45.9"
  codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.135"
  codeSystemName="icd10am"
  displayName="Asthma, unspecified">
  <originalText>Asthma</originalText>
</code>

<!-- No suitable code can be found or there is no code system in use -->
<code
  <originalText>Asthma</originalText>
</code>
```

11.2 id

The <id> element pattern is of data type II (Instance Identifier). The II data type may have:

- a null attribute (*nullFlavor*)
- a *root*
- a *root* and an *extension*
- a *root* and an *extension* and an *assigningAuthorityName*
- a *root* and an *assigningAuthorityName*
- a *root* and an *assigningAuthorityName* and a *displayable*
- a *root* and an *extension* and a *displayable*
- a *root* and an *extension* and an *assigningAuthorityName* and a *displayable*
- a *root* and a *displayable*

The root attribute is **REQUIRED** and is a unique identifier that guarantees the global uniqueness of the instance identifier. The root alone **MAY** be the entire instance identifier. The root attribute **SHALL** be a UUID or OID.

The extension attribute **MAY** be present, and is a character string as a unique identifier within the scope of the identifier root.

In the case of business or technical identifier an *assigningAuthorityName* is **RECOMMENDED**.

Identifiers appear in this implementation guide for two different reasons. The first is that the identifier has been identified as relevant to the business process or clinical workflow. These identifiers are documented in mapping tables in the Element column, e.g. Composition > identifier or Medication Statement (Prescription) > identifier, which make clear the meaning of this identifier.

In addition, the implementation makes clear that identifiers may also be found on many other parts of the CDA structure. These identifiers, often referred to as technical identifiers, are allowed to facilitate record matching across multiple versions of related documents, so that the same record can consistently be identified, in spite of variations in the information as the record passes through time or between systems. These identifiers have no meaning in the business specification. If senders provide one of these identifiers, it **SHALL** always be the same identifier in all versions of the record, and it **SHALL** be globally unique per the rules of the II data type.

Example 11.2. id

```
<id root="2.16.840.1.113883.19" extension="123A45" />  
<ext:id assigningAuthorityName="HPI-O" root="1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0.8003621566684455" />
```

11.3 time

When a time value is supplied it **SHALL** include hours and minutes.

When a time value is supplied it **MAY** include seconds and fractions of seconds.

When a time value is supplied it **SHALL** include a time zone.

The <time> element pattern is of data type TS (Point in Time) and can also be an interval between two times (IVL_TS), representing a period of time. Both forms can either have a nullFlavor attribute or child components following allowed patterns.

A simple timestamp (point in time) will only contain a value attribute containing the time value, expressed as a series of digits as long as required or as available.

Example 11.3. Simple timestamp

```
<time value="20091030" />
```

This represents "October 30, 2009" to calendar day precision. In cases where the containing element is defined in the CDA schema as "ANY" data type, it is useful to provide an xsi:type attribute, set to the value "TS".

The period of time pattern is defined in terms of one or both of its lowest and highest values. The low and high elements are instances of the timestamp pattern described above. More complex time period concepts can be expressed by combining a high, low, or centre element with a width element.

Example 11.4. Low time

```
<period>
  <low value="20091030" />
</period>
```

This represents "a period after October 30, 2009". In cases where the containing element is defined in the CDA schema as "ANY" data type, it is useful to provide an xsi:type attribute, set to the value "IVL_TS", as in the next example.

Example 11.5. Interval timestamp 1

```
<period xsi:type="IVL_TS">
  <high value="200910301030+1000" />
</period>
```

This represents "a period before 10:30 a.m. UTC+10, October 30, 2009". A discretionary xsi:type attribute has been provided to explicitly cast the pattern to "IVL_TS".

Example 11.6. Interval timestamp 2

```
<period xsi:type="IVL_TS">
  <low value="2007" />
  <high value="2009" />
</period>
```

This represents "the calendar years between 2007 and 2009". The low element **SHALL** precede the high element. As per the previous example, a discretionary xsi:type attribute has been provided to explicitly cast the pattern to "IVL_TS".

Example 11.7. Width time

```
<period>
  <high value="20091017" />
  <width value="2" unit="wk" />
</period>
```

This expresses "two weeks before October 17th, 2009". A low value can be derived from this.

11.4 Entity Identifier

CDA mapping

Element	Definition	Card	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
CDA Data Elements				
Entity Identifier	A number or code issued for the purpose of identifying a participant within a health-care context.	The cardinality of the element comes from the linking parent.	//ext:asEntityIdentifier	
		1..1	//ext:asEntityIdentifier/@classCode="IDENT"	
		1..1	//ext:asEntityIdentifier/ext:id	
		1..1	//ext:asEntityIdentifier/ext:id/@root	@root SHALL be an OID and SHALL NOT be a UUID. @root SHALL be a globally unique object identifier (i.e. OID) that identifies the combination of geographic area, issuer and type. If no such OID exists, it SHALL be defined before any identifiers can be created.
		0..1	//ext:asEntityIdentifier/ext:id/@extension	If present, @extension SHALL be a unique identifier within the scope of the root that is populated directly from the designation.
		0..1	//ext:asEntityIdentifier/ext:id/@assigningAuthorityName	@assigningAuthorityName SHOULD be used and, if it is used, SHALL be a human-readable name for the namespace represented in the root that is populated with the issuer, or identifier type, or a concatenation of both as appropriate. This SHOULD NOT be used for machine readability purposes.
		0..1	//ext:asEntityIdentifier/ext:code	See < code > for available attributes.
		0..1	//ext:asEntityIdentifier/ext:assigningGeographicArea	
		1..1	//ext:asEntityIdentifier/ext:assigningGeographicArea/@classCode="PLC"	
		0..1	//ext:asEntityIdentifier/ext:assigningGeographicArea/ext:name	If present, ext:name SHALL be the range and extent that the identifier applies to the object with which it is associated that is populated directly from the geographic area. This SHOULD NOT be used for machine readability purposes. Healthcare Identifier Geographic Area (preferred) This element is expected to be populated with the display, e.g. "National Identifier".

Example 11.8. Entity Identifier

```
<!-- These example fragments are illustrative only. They cannot be treated as clinically valid.  
While every effort has been taken to ensure that the examples are consistent with the message specification, where  
there are conflicts with the written message specification or schema, the specification or schema will take precedence. -->  
  
<!-- person -->  
<x:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">  
  <x:id root="1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0.800360883357361" assigningAuthorityName="IHI" />  
  <x:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">  
    <x:name>National Identifier</x:name>  
  </x:assigningGeographicArea>  
</x:asEntityIdentifier>  
  
<x:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">  
  <x:id root="1.2.36.1.2001.1005.29.8003621566684455" extension="542181" assigningAuthorityName="Croydon GP Centre" />  
  <x:code code="MP" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203" codeSystemName="Identifier Type (HL7)" />  
</x:asEntityIdentifier>  
  
<!-- organisation -->  
<ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">  
  <ext:id assigningAuthorityName="HPI-O" root="1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0.8003621566684455" />  
  <ext:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">  
    <ext:name>National Identifier</ext:name>  
  </ext:assigningGeographicArea>  
</ext:asEntityIdentifier>
```

11.5 Personal Relationship

CDA mapping

Element	Definition	Card	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
CDA Data Elements				
Personal Relationship	The relationship of a participant to a subject of care (patient).	The cardinality of the element comes from the linking parent.	//ext:personalRelationship	This logical data component SHALL NOT be instantiated if the participant is a healthcare provider. If ext:personalRelationship is instantiated the value of Entity Identifier SHALL NOT be a HPI-I.
		0..1	//ext:personalRelationship/@classCode="PRS"	
		0..1	//ext:personalRelationship/ext:id	
		1..1	//ext:personalRelationship/ext:code	See <code> for available attributes. Related Person Relationship Type (extensible)
		0..1	//ext:personalRelationship/ext:statusCode	See <code> for available attributes. v3 Code System RoleStatus (required)
		0..1	//ext:personalRelationship/ext:effectiveTime	See <time> for available attributes.
		1..1	//ext:personalRelationship/ext:asPersonalRelationship	
		0..1	//ext:personalRelationship/ext:asPersonalRelationship/@classCode="PSN"	
		0..1	//ext:personalRelationship/ext:asPersonalRelationship/@determinerCode="INSTANCE"	
		1..1	//ext:personalRelationship/ext:asPersonalRelationship/id	This SHALL hold the same value as /ClinicalDocument/recordTarget/patientRole/id.
		1..1	//ext:personalRelationship/ext:asPersonalRelationship/administrativeGenderCode/@nullFlavor="NA"	Included for CDA conformance only.

Example 11.9. Personal Relationship

```
<!-- These example fragments are illustrative only. They cannot be treated as clinically valid.  
While every effort has been taken to ensure that the examples are consistent with the message specification, where  
there are conflicts with the written message specification or schema, the specification or schema will take precedence. -->  
  
<!-- patient -->  
<recordTarget>  
  <patientRole>  
    <!-- patient identifier-->  
    <id extension="100543" root="2.16.840.1.113883.19.1.2.3.4"/>  
  </patientRole>  
</recordTarget>  
  
<!-- author with personal relationship -->  
<author>  
  <time value="200911031647+1000"/>  
  <assignedAuthor>  
    <!-- author identifier-->  
    <id root="86d729b8-72d2-460a-a64c-489a51607450"/>  
    <assignedPerson>  
      <!-- personal relationship -->  
      <ext:personalRelationship>  
        <!--relationship-->  
        <ext:code code="SIGOTHR" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.111" codeSystemName="v3 Code System RoleCode" displayName="significant other" />  
        <!--patient-->  
        <ext:asPersonalRelationship>  
          <!-- patient identifier-->  
          <id extension="100543" root="2.16.840.1.113883.19.1.2.3.4"/>  
          <administrativeGenderCode nullFlavor="NA" />  
        </ext:asPersonalRelationship>  
      </ext:personalRelationship>  
    </assignedPerson>  
  </assignedAuthor>  
</author>  
  
<!-- participant performer with personal relationship -->  
<participant typeCode="PRF">  
  <associatedEntity classCode="ASSIGNED">  
    <!--participant performer identifier-->  
    <id root="f3351b5c-8a6c-437c-a55c-a6c121873456"/>  
    <!-- personal relationship -->  
    <associatedPerson>  
      <ext:personalRelationship>  
        <!--relationship-->  
        <ext:code code="FAMMEMB" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.111" codeSystemName="v3 Code System RoleCode" displayName="Family Member" />  
        <!--patient-->  
        <ext:asPersonalRelationship>  
          <!-- patient identifier-->  
          <id extension="100543" root="2.16.840.1.113883.19.1.2.3.4"/>  
          <administrativeGenderCode nullFlavor="NA" />  
        </ext:asPersonalRelationship>  
      </ext:personalRelationship>  
    </associatedPerson>  
  </associatedEntity>  
</participant>
```

11.6 Qualification

CDA mapping

Element	Definition	Card	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
CDA Data Elements				
Qualification	A list of professional certifications, and certificates recognising having passed a course.	0..1	//ext:asQualifications	
		1..1	//ext:asQualifications/@classCode="QUAL"	
		1..1	//ext:asQualifications/ext:code	Qualifications is a text field, so the text list is entered in the originalText of this element.

11.7 Language Communication

CDA mapping

Element	Definition	Card	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
CDA Data Elements				
Language Communication	The language communication capabilities of an individual.	The cardinality of the element comes from the linking parent.	//ext:languageCommunication	
	0..1		//ext:languageCommunication/languageCode	This CDA schema element is of type CodedSimpleValue (CS). Common Languages in Australia (extensible)
	0..1		//ext:languageCommunication modeCode	See <code> for available attributes. Method of expression of a language.
	0..1		//ext:languageCommunication/proficiencyLevelCode	See <code> for available attributes. Level of proficiency in a language.
	0..1		//ext:languageCommunication/preferenceInd	An indicator specifying whether a language is preferred.

Example 11.10. Language Communication

<!-- These example fragments are illustrative only. They cannot be treated as clinically valid.
While every effort has been taken to ensure that the examples are consistent with the message specification, where
there are conflicts with the written message specification or schema, the specification or schema will take precedence. -->

```
<!-- Language communication -->
<ext:languageCommunication>
  <!-- language code -->
  <languageCode code="en"/>
  <!-- preference indicator -->
  <preferenceInd value="true"/>
</ext:languageCommunication>
  <!-- language communication -->
  <ext:languageCommunication>
    <!-- language code -->
    <languageCode code="de"/>
    <!-- preference indicator -->
    <preferenceInd value="true"/>
</ext:languageCommunication>
```

Appendix A. Complex data type mappings to CDA (R2)

This informative appendix provides some guidance on how complex data types referred to in the body of this specification can map to CDA (R2). The mappings provided are a set of preferred mappings and do not represent conformance requirements.

A.1 Identifier

This informative appendix provides some guidance on how the complex data type [Identifier](#), referenced in the body of this specification can map to CDA (R2). The mappings provided are a set of preferred mappings and do not represent conformance requirements.

In addition to examples provided in this implementation guide some guidance on representation of common identifiers in CDA is provided by [Representation of Common Australian Identifiers in v2 and CDA \[HI2011\]](#) and [Common - Clinical Document \[DH2019a\]](#).

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Identifier	A technical identifier - identifies some entity uniquely and unambiguously.	Cardinality comes from linking parent.	Element	See: instantiation choices	<p>In CDA it is possible that the identifier is formed such that the system and value are both part of the value of the root attribute. In this circumstance the extension attribute should not be instantiated.</p> <p>instantiation choices:</p> <p>If the identifier element is for a Patient, Practitioner, PractitionerRole, Organization, RelatedPerson or Device it is expected to be instantiated as //ext:asEntityIdentifier/@classCode="IDENT". See <Entity Identifier> for available attributes.</p> <p>The identifier element may be instantiated as //id.</p>
Identifier > use	The purpose of this identifier.	0..1	code	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Identifier > type	A coded type for the identifier that can be used to determine which identifier to use for a specific purpose.	0..1	code	//ext:asEntityIdentifier/ext:code	<p>Identifier Type Codes (extensible)</p> <p>This element is only available if the identifier is instantiated as //ext:asEntityIdentifier/@classCode="IDENT".</p>
Identifier > system	Establishes the namespace for the value - that is, a URL that describes a set values that are unique.	0..1	uri	See: instantiation choices	<p>instantiation choices:</p> <p>If the identifier element is for a Patient, Practitioner, PractitionerRole, Organization, RelatedPerson or Device this is expected to be instantiated as //ext:asEntityIdentifier/ext:id/@root.</p> <p>The identifier system may be instantiated as //id/@root.</p>
Identifier > value	The portion of the identifier typically relevant to the user and which is unique within the context of the system.	0..1	string	See: instantiation choices	<p>instantiation choices:</p> <p>If the identifier element is for a Patient, Practitioner, PractitionerRole, Organization, RelatedPerson or Device this is expected to be instantiated as //ext:asEntityIdentifier/ext:id/@extension.</p> <p>The identifier value may be instantiated as //id/@extension.</p>
Identifier > period	Time period during which identifier is/was valid for use.	0..1	Period	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Identifier > assigner	Organization that issued/manages the identifier.	0..1	Reference (Organization)	See: instantiation choices	instantiation choices: If the identifier element is for a Patient, Practitioner, PractitionerRole, Organization, RelatedPerson or Device this is expected to be instantiated as //ext:asEntityIdentifier/ext:id/@assigningAuthorityName. The identifier value may be instantiated as //id/@assigningAuthorityName.

Example A.1. Identifier

```
<!-- These example fragments are illustrative only. They cannot be treated as clinically valid.  
While every effort has been taken to ensure that the examples are consistent with the message specification, where  
there are conflicts with the written message specification or schema, the specification or schema will take precedence. -->  
  
<!-- subject -->  
<recordTarget>  
  <!-- subject (Patient) -->  
  <patientRole>  
    <patient>  
      <administrativeGenderCode></administrativeGenderCode>  
  
      <!-- Patient.identifier as an Australian IHI -->  
      <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">  
        <!-- identifier.type.text=IHI,  
        identifier.value=8003600200002222,  
        identifier.system=http://ns.electronichealth.net.au/id/hi/ih/1.0 -->  
        <ext:id assigningAuthorityName="IHI" root="1.2.36.1.2001.0.8003600200002222" />  
        <ext:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">  
          <ext:name>National Identifier</ext:name>  
        </ext:assigningGeographicArea>  
      </ext:asEntityIdentifier>  
  
      <!-- Patient.identifier as an Institution Medical Record-->  
      <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">  
        <!-- identifier.assigner=Croydon GP Centre,  
        identifier.value=542181,  
        identifier.system=urn:oid:1.2.36.1.2001.1005.29.8003621566684455 -->  
        <ext:id root="1.2.36.1.2001.29.8003621566684455" extension="542181" assigningAuthorityName="Croydon GP Centre" />  
        <!-- Patient.identifier.type -->  
        <ext:code code="MR" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203" codeSystemName="Identifier Type (HL7)" />  
      </ext:asEntityIdentifier>  
  
      <!-- Patient.identifier as a Medicare Number -->  
      <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">  
        <!-- identifier.system=urn:oid:1.2.36.1.5001.1.0.7,  
        identifier.value=123456789,  
        identifier.assigner=Medicare Card Number -->  
        <ext:id assigningAuthorityName="Medicare Card Number"  
          root="1.2.36.1.5001.1.0.7" extension="1234567892" />  
        <ext:code code="MO" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"  
          codeSystemName="Identifier Type (HL7)" displayName="Patient's Medicare number" />  
        <!-- Identifier.period is not available in an asEntityIdentifier class -->  
      </ext:asEntityIdentifier>  
  
      <!-- Patient.identifier as a DVA Number -->  
      <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">  
        <!-- identifier.system=urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.879.270091,  
        identifier.value=NBUR9080,  
        identifier.assigner=Department of Veterans' Affairs -->  
        <ext:id assigningAuthorityName="Department of Veterans' Affairs"  
          root="2.16.840.1.113883.3.879.270091" extension="NBUR9080" />  
        <ext:code code="DVG" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.2.3.4.1.1.203"  
          codeSystemName="HL7V2Table0203IdentifierTypeAUExtended" displayName="DVA Gold Card Number" />  
        <!-- Identifier.period is not available in an asEntityIdentifier class -->  
      </ext:asEntityIdentifier>  
  
      <!-- Patient.identifier as a Healthcare card number -->  
      <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">  
        <!-- identifier.system=urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.879.270098,
```

```
        identifier.value=307111942H,
        identifier.assigner=Centrelink customer reference number -->
<ext:id assigningAuthorityName="Centrelink customer reference number"
root="2.16.840.1.113883.3.879.270098" extension="307111942H"/>
<ext:code code="HC" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"
codeSystemName="Identifier Type (HL7)" displayName="Health Card Number"/>
</ext:asEntityIdentifier>

</patient>
</patientRole>
</recordTarget>

<author>
<time value="200911031647+1000"/>
<!-- author (PractitionerRole) -->
<assignedAuthor>
<!-- PractitionerRole.id -->
<id root="86d729b8-72d2-460a-a64c-489a51607450"/>
<!-- PractitionerRole.practitioner(Practitioner) -->
<assignedPerson>
<!-- Practitioner.identifier as an Australian HPI-I -->
<ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
<!-- identifier.value=8003610537409456,
identifier.system=urn:oid:1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0,
identifier.assigner=HPI-I -->
<ext:id assigningAuthorityName="HPI-I"
root="1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0.8003610537409456"/>
<ext:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">
<ext:name>National Identifier</ext:name>
</ext:assigningGeographicArea>
</ext:asEntityIdentifier>
</assignedPerson>
<!-- PractitionerRole.identifier as an ABN scoped provider identifier -->
<ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
<!-- identifier.value=8003610537409456,
identifier.system=urn:oid:1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0,
identifier.assigner=HPI-I -->
<ext:id assigningAuthorityName="Albion Hospital",
root="1.2.36.1.2001.1005.70.51824753556"
extension="peterwinslow44"/>
<!-- identifier.type -->
<ext:code code="EI"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.18.108"
codeSystemName="v2 Identifier Type"
displayName="Employee number"/>
</ext:asEntityIdentifier>
</assignedPerson>
</assignedAuthor>
<!--PractitionerRole.organization (Organization)-->
<representedOrganization>
<!-- Organization.name -->
<name>Albion Hospital</name>
<!--Organization.identifier as an ABN-->
<ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
<!-- identifier.value=51824754455,
identifier.system=urn:oid:1.2.36,
identifier.assigner=ABN -->
<ext:id root="1.2.36.51824754455" assigningAuthorityName="ABN"/>
<!-- identifier.type -->
<ext:code code="XX"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203" />
</ext:asEntityIdentifier>
</representedOrganization>
```

```
</author>

<custodian>
  <!-- custodian (Organization)-->
  <assignedCustodian>
    <representedCustodianOrganization>
      <!-- Organization.id-->
      <id root="d0455def-ff37-4ebe-97fb-52db7224b148"/>
      <!-- Organization.identifier as a Laboratory NATA Identifier -->
      <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
        <!-- identifier.system.value=urn:oid:1.2.36.1.2001.1005.12,
        identifier.value=2184,
        identifier.assigner=NATA -->
        <ext:id assigningAuthorityName="NATA"
          root="1.2.36.1.2001.1005.12" extension="2184"/>
        <!-- identifier.type -->
        <ext:code code="XX" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"/>
      </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
    </representedCustodianOrganization>
  </assignedCustodian>
</custodian>

<!--DiagnosticReport.basedOn-->
<inFulfillmentOf typeCode="FLFS">
  <!--ProcedureRequest-->
  <order classCode="ACT" moodCode="RQO">
    <!-- ProcedureRequest.identifier
    identifier.system=urn:oid:1.2.36.1.2001.1005.52.8003621566684455, identifier.value=123451 -->
    <id extension="123451" root="1.2.36.1.2001.1005.52.8003621566684455" />
  </order>
</inFulfillmentOf>
```

A.2 HumanName

This informative appendix provides some guidance on how the complex data type [HumanName](#), referenced in the body of this specification can map to CDA (R2). The mappings provided are a set of preferred mappings and do not represent conformance requirements.

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
HumanName	A human's name with the ability to identify parts and usage.	Cardinality comes from linking parent.	Element	//name	Name SHALL have at least text or family or given instantiated. In CDA a full text representation of a name is not to be included in the same instance as a structured representation with the same name parts. Either the free text representation or a name with structure (e.g. name/family or name/given) should be provided but not both.
HumanName > use	Identifies the purpose for this name.	0..1	code	//name/@use	Common Person Name Use (required) ¹
HumanName > text	A full text representation of the name.	0..1	string	//name	
HumanName > family	The part of a name that links to the genealogy. In some cultures (e.g. Eritrea) the family name of a son is the first name of his father.	0..1	string	//name/family	
HumanName > given	Given name.	0..*	string	//name/given	
HumanName > prefix	Part of the name that is acquired as a title due to academic, legal, employment or nobility status, etc. and that appears at the start of the name.	0..*	string	//name/prefix	Prefix values can be populated as described in AS 4846 (2014) – Person and provider identification in healthcare [SA2014a] , 4.4.2 Name Title.
HumanName > suffix	Part of the name that is acquired as a title due to academic, legal, employment or nobility status, etc. and that appears at the end of the name.	0..*	string	//name/suffix	Suffix values can be populated as described in AS 4846 (2014) – Person and provider identification in healthcare [SA2014a] , 4.5.3.2 Name Suffix.
HumanName > period	Indicates the period of time when this name was valid for the named person.	0..1	Period	//name/validTime	See <time> for available attributes.

¹Note: The source terminology binding on use in HumanName [[DH2019g](#)] and the terminology binding in the representation of the model in this specification are different. Mappings between the set of concepts are defined in [NameUse \(HL7 FHIR\)](#) to [Common Person Name Use](#) concept map.

Example A.2. HumanName

```
<!-- These example fragments are illustrative only. They cannot be treated as clinically valid.  
While every effort has been taken to ensure that the examples are consistent with the message specification, where  
there are conflicts with the written message specification or schema, the specification or schema will take precedence. -->  
  
<!-- HumanName where use=official -->  
<name use="C">  
  <!-- HumanName.given -->  
  <given>Adam</given>  
  <!-- HumanName.given -->  
  <given>A.</given>  
  <!-- HumanName.family -->  
  <family>Everyman</family>  
</name>  
  
<!-- HumanName where use=official -->  
<name use="C">  
  <!-- HumanName.text -->  
  Adam A. Everyman  
</name>  
  
<!-- HumanName where use=usual -->  
<name use="I">  
  <!-- HumanName.given -->  
  <given>Damo</given>  
</name>  
  
<!-- HumanName where use=old -->  
<name use="DN">  
  <!-- HumanName.given -->  
  <given>Adam</given>  
  <!-- HumanName.given -->  
  <given>A.</given>  
  <!-- HumanName.family -->  
  <family>Adamson</family>  
  <!-- HumanName.period -->  
  <validTime xsi:type="IVL_TS">  
    <low value="01012001" />  
    <high value="01012012" />  
  </validTime>  
</name>
```

A.3 Address

This informative appendix provides some guidance on how the complex data type [Address](#), referenced in the body of this specification can map to CDA (R2). The mappings provided are a set of preferred mappings and do not represent conformance requirements.

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Address	An address expressed using postal conventions (as opposed to GPS or other location definition formats). This data type may be used to convey addresses for use in delivering mail as well as for visiting locations which might not be valid for mail delivery. There are a variety of postal address formats defined around the world.	Cardinality comes from linking parent.	Element	//addr	
Address > use	The purpose of this address.	0..1	code	//addr/@use	Address Use HL7 v3 (required) addr/@use may be used to carry more than one value by a space separated list of codes.
Address > type	Distinguishes between physical addresses (those you can visit) and mailing addresses (e.g. PO Boxes and care-of addresses). Most addresses are both.	0..1	code	//addr/@use	Address Type HL7 v3 (required) addr/@use may be used to carry more than one value by a space separated list of codes.
Address > text	A full text representation of the address.	0..1	string	//addr	The expectation is that this is free text.
Address > line	This component contains the house number, apartment number, street name, street direction, P.O. Box number, delivery hints, and similar address information.	0..*	string	//addr/streetAddressLine	
Address > city	The name of the city, town, village or other community or delivery center.	0..1	string	//addr/city	
Address > district	The name of the administrative area (county).	0..1	string	//addr/county	
Address > state	Sub-unit of a country with limited sovereignty in a federally organized country. A code may be used if codes are in common use (i.e. US 2 letter state codes).	0..1	string	//addr/state	
Address > postalCode	A postal code designating a region defined by the postal service.	0..1	string	//addr/postalCode	
Address > country	Country - a nation as commonly understood or generally accepted.	0..1	string	//addr/country	Iso 3166 Part 1: 2 Letter Codes (preferred)
Address > period	Time period when address was/is in use.	0..1	Period	//addr/useablePeriod	

Example A.3. Address

```
<!-- These example fragments are illustrative only. They cannot be treated as clinically valid.  
While every effort has been taken to ensure that the examples are consistent with the message specification, where  
there are conflicts with the written message specification or schema, the specification or schema will take precedence. -->  
  
<!-- Address where use=work and type=postal -->  
<addr use="PST WP">  
  <!--Address.text-->  
  1050 W Wishard Blvd  
  RG  
  5th floor  
  Indianapolis, IN 46240  
  <!--Address.line-->  
  <streetAddressLine>1050 W Wishard Blvd</streetAddressLine>  
  <!--Address.line-->  
  <streetAddressLine>RG 5th floor</streetAddressLine>  
  <!--Address.city-->  
  <city>Indianapolis</city>  
  <!--Address.state-->  
  <state>IN</state>  
  <!--Address.postalCode-->  
  <postalCode>46240</postalCode>  
</addr>  
  
<!-- Address where use=home and type=physical -->  
<addr use="PHYS H">  
  <!--Address.text-->  
  1 Back Lane&#13;&#10;Holmfirth&#13;&#10;HUDDERSFIELD&#13;&#10;HD7 1HQ  
  <!--Address.line-->  
  <streetAddressLine>1 Back Lane</streetAddressLine>  
  <!--Address.city-->  
  <city>Holmfirth</city>  
  <!--Address.district-->  
  <county>HUDDERSFIELD</county>  
  <!--Address.postalCode-->  
  <postalCode>HD7 1HQ</postalCode>  
</addr>  
  
<!-- Address where use=old -->  
<addr use="TMP">  
  <!--Address.line-->  
  <streetAddressLine>Rue Lougoraïa 12, app. 10</streetAddressLine>  
  <!--Address.city-->  
  <city>Korolevo</city>  
  <!--Address.state-->  
  <state>Minsk</state>  
  <!--Address.country-->  
  <country>BELARUS</country>  
  <!--Address.period-->  
  <useablePeriod xsi:type="IVL_TS">  
    <low value="01012001" />  
    <high value="01012012" />  
  </useablePeriod>  
</addr>
```

A.4 Address as Australian Address

This informative appendix provides some guidance on the constrained form of complex data type [Address](#) as [Australian Address](#) published by HL7 Australia. The mappings provided are a set of preferred mappings and do not represent conformance requirements.

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Address	An Australian address expressed using postal conventions (as opposed to GPS or other location definition formats).	Cardinality comes from linking parent.	Element	//addr	addr SHALL have text or one or more line (addr/streetAddressLine).
Address > use	The purpose of this address.	0..1	code	//addr/@use	Address Use HL7 v3 (required) //addr/@use may be used to carry more than one value by a space separated list of codes.
Address > type	Distinguishes between physical addresses (those you can visit) and mailing addresses (e.g. PO Boxes and care-of addresses). Most addresses are both.	0..1	code	//addr/@use	Address Type HL7 v3 (required) //addr/@use may be used to carry more than one value by a space separated list of codes.
Address > text	A full text representation of the address.	0..1	string	//addr	The expectation is that this is free text.
Address > line	This component contains the house number, apartment number, street name, street direction, P.O. Box number, delivery hints, and similar address information.	0..*	string	//addr/streetAddressLine	
Address > city	The name of the city, town, village or other community or delivery center.	0..1	string	//addr/city	
Address > district	The name of the administrative area (county).	0..1	string	//addr/county	
Address > state	Sub-unit of a country with limited sovereignty in a federally organized country. A code may be used if codes are in common use (i.e. US 2 letter state codes).	0..1	string	//addr/state	Australian States and Territories (required) This element SHALL be populated with the code e.g. "NT".
Address > postalCode	A postal code designating a region defined by the postal service.	0..1	string	//addr/postalCode	The maximum length of postalCode SHALL be 4.
Address > country	Fixed value if present otherwise assumed to be Australia in this context.	0..1	string	//addr/country	This element SHALL be populated with "AU".
Address > period	Time period when address was/is in use.	0..1	Period	//addr/useablePeriod	
Address > nofixedaddress	No fixed address indicator.	0..1	boolean	n/a	Not mapped directly, if true, addr SHOULD be equal to "NO FIXED ADDRESS" and addr/@use SHOULD be "PHYS".

Example A.4. Address

```
<!-- These example fragments are illustrative only. They cannot be treated as clinically valid.  
While every effort has been taken to ensure that the examples are consistent with the message specification, where  
there are conflicts with the written message specification or schema, the specification or schema will take precedence. -->  
  
<!-- Australian Address with no fixed address in Melbourne, VIC-->  
<addr use="PHYS">  
<!--Address.text-->  
NO FIXED ADDRESS  
<!--Address.city-->  
<city>Melbourne</city>  
<!--Address.state-->  
<state>VIC</state>  
</addr>  
  
<!-- Australian Address with only text-->  
<addr use="PHYS">  
<!--Address.text-->  
Level 1, 300 George St, Brisbane, QLD 4000  
</addr>  
  
<!-- Australian Address where use=work and type=postal -->  
<addr use="PST WP">  
<!--Address.line-->  
<streetAddressLine>Northern Territory Office, Department of Addresses, GPO Box 19132110</streetAddressLine>  
<!--Address.city-->  
<city>Darwin</city>  
<!--Address.state-->  
<state>NT</state>  
<!--Address.postalCode-->  
<postalCode>0801</postalCode>  
<!--Address.country-->  
<country>AU</country>  
<!--Address.period-->  
<useablePeriod xsi:type="IVL_TS">  
<low value="200311031647+1000" />  
</useablePeriod>  
</addr>  
  
<!-- Australian Address where use=work and type=physical -->  
<addr use="PHYS WP">  
<!--Address.line-->  
<streetAddressLine>5th Floor, Northern Territory House, 223 Mitchell Street</streetAddressLine>  
<!--Address.city-->  
<city>Darwin</city>  
<!--Address.state-->  
<state>NT</state>  
<!--Address.postalCode-->  
<postalCode>0800</postalCode>  
<!--Address.country-->  
<country>AU</country>  
</addr>
```

A.5 ContactPoint

This informative appendix provides some guidance on how the complex data type [ContactPoint](#), referenced in the body of this specification can map to CDA (R2). The mappings provided are a set of preferred mappings and do not represent conformance requirements.

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
ContactPoint	A human's name with the ability to identify parts and usage.	Cardinality comes from linking parent.	Element	//telecom	If value is present, system SHALL be present.
ContactPoint > system	Telecommunications form for contact point - what communications system is required to make use of the contact.	0..1	code	//telecom/@value	HL7 URLScheme (required) Makes up part of the attribute: "system:value", e.g. "tel:phone number", "mailto:email address", "http:URL", etc.
ContactPoint > value	The actual contact point details, in a form that is meaningful to the designated communication system (i.e. phone number or email address).	0..1	string	//telecom/@value	Makes up the part of the attribute: "system:value", e.g. "tel:phone number", "mailto:email address", "http:URL", etc.
ContactPoint > use	Identifies the purpose for the contact point.	0..1	code	//telecom/@use	HL7 TelecommunicationAddressUse (required)
ContactPoint > rank	Specifies a preferred order in which to use a set of contacts. Contacts are ranked with lower values coming before higher values.	0..1	positiveInt	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
ContactPoint > period	Time period when the contact point was/is in use.	0..1	Period	//telecom/usablePeriod	See < time > for available attributes.

Example A.5. ContactPoint

```
<!-- These example fragments are illustrative only. They cannot be treated as clinically valid.  
While every effort has been taken to ensure that the examples are consistent with the message specification, where  
there are conflicts with the written message specification or schema, the specification or schema will take precedence. -->  
  
<!-- ContactPoint where system=phone, value=+1-(555)555-1212, use=home -->  
<telecom value="tel:+1-(555)555-1212" use="H">  
  <!-- ContactPoint.period -->  
  <useablePeriod xsi:type="IVL_TS">  
    <low value="01012001" />  
    <high value="01012012" />  
  </useablePeriod>  
</telecom>  
  
<!-- ContactPoint where system=phone, value=0712341234, use=home -->  
<telecom use="H" value="tel:0712341234" />  
  
<!-- ContactPoint where system=email, value=sfranklin@mail.com.au, use=work -->  
<telecom use="WP" value="mailto:sfranklin@mail.com.au" />
```

A.6 Dosage

This informative appendix provides some guidance on how the complex data type [Dosage](#), referenced in the body of this specification can map to CDA (R2). The mappings provided are a set of preferred mappings and do not represent conformance requirements.

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Dosage	Indicates how the medication is/was taken or should be taken by the patient.	Cardinality comes from linking parent.	Element	See: instantiation choices	instantiation choices: When a single instance of dosage is recorded the logical element has no direct mapping; it is implicit in the mapping of the child elements. When more than one instance of dosage is recorded, each instance of dosage is recorded as a child substanceAdministration, e.g. //substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[dosage]/substanceAdministration[@typeCode="SBADM", @moodCode="INT"].
Dosage > sequence	Indicates the order in which the dosage instructions should be applied or interpreted.	0..1	integer	//entryRelationship[dosage]	This element SHALL NOT be instantiated for a single instance of dosage. The value of sequenceNumber SHALL be an ordinal number starting at "1" and increasing by "1" for each subsequent instance of dosage.
				//entryRelationship[dosage]/@typeCode="COMP"	
				//entryRelationship[dosage]/sequenceNumber	
Dosage > text	Free text dosage instructions e.g. SIG.	0..1	string	//text	
Dosage > additionalInstruction	Supplemental instruction - e.g. 'with meals'.	0..*	CodeableConcept	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; included implicitly in text, or patientInstruction, or timing, asNeeded.
Dosage > patientInstruction	Instructions in terms that are understood by the patient or consumer.	0..1	string	//text	
Dosage > timing	When medication should be administered.	0..1	Timing	//effectiveTime	See time for available attributes. Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): Timing .

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Dosage > asNeeded	Indicates whether the Medication is only taken when needed within a specific dosing schedule (Boolean option), or it indicates the precondition for taking the Medication (CodeableConcept).	0..1	boolean CodeableConcept	//precondition //precondition/@typeCode="PRCN" //precondition/criterion //precondition/criterion/code //precondition/criterion/code/@code="ASSERTION" //precondition/criterion/code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4" //precondition/criterion/value	//value/@xsi:type SHALL be "CD" or "BL". Clinical Finding (preferred)
Dosage > site	Body site to administer to.	0..1	CodeableConcept	//approachSiteCode	See <code> for available attributes. Body Site (required)
Dosage > route	How drug should enter body.	0..1	CodeableConcept	//routeCode	See <code> for available attributes. Route of Administration (preferred)
Dosage > method	Technique for administering medication.	0..1	CodeableConcept	//ext:methodCode	See <code> for available attributes. SNOMED CT Administration Method Codes (preferred)
Dosage > dose	Amount of medication per dose.	0..1	Range SimpleQuantity	//doseQuantity	
Dosage > maxDosePerPeriod	Upper limit on medication per unit of time.	0..1	Ratio	//maxDoseQuantity	
Dosage > maxDosePerAdministration	Upper limit on medication per administration.	0..1	SimpleQuantity	n/a	Not directly supported in CDA however this may be represented by an administration schedule with a maxDosePerAdministration in that administration schedule represented as maxDoseQuantity with a period of a single administration.
Dosage > maxDosePerLifetime	Upper limit on medication per lifetime of the patient.	0..1	SimpleQuantity	n/a	Not directly supported in CDA. One possible way to represent this concept is to represent an observation with a code equivalent to max dose per lifetime. One possibly way to represent this concept is to represent an instance of dosage with maxDoseQuantity and effectiveTime/high/@value="PINF" thus indicating that the end of the period of administration is positive infinity.
Dosage > rate	Amount of medication per unit of time.	0..1	Ratio Range SimpleQuantity	//rateQuantity	

Example A.6. Dosage

<!-- These example fragments are illustrative only. They cannot be treated as clinically valid.
While every effort has been taken to ensure that the examples are consistent with the message specification, where
there are conflicts with the written message specification or schema, the specification or schema will take precedence. -->

```
<entry>
  <!-- MedicationStatement - more than one instance of Dosage -->
  <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
    <!-- identifier -->
    <id root="4255b903-6f90-41b8-a71c-8ac0eelebdc3"/>
    <!-- medication.as(medicationCodeableConcept) -->
    <consumable>
      <manufacturedProduct>
        <manufacturedMaterial>
          <code code="6006011000036102"
            codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1004.100"
            displayName="Lasix (frusemide 40 mg) tablet: uncoated, 1 tablet">
            <originalText>Lasix (frusemide 40 mg)
              tablet</originalText>
          </code>
        </manufacturedMaterial>
      </manufacturedProduct>
    </consumable>

    <!-- Dosage to indicate asNeeded with a condition-->
    <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP" >
      <!-- sequence -->
      <sequenceNumber value="1"/>
      <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="INT" >
        <consumable>
          <manufacturedProduct>
            <manufacturedMaterial nullFlavor="NA" />
          </manufacturedProduct>
        </consumable>
        <!-- asNeededCodeableConcept - instantiated as prn with specified condition -->
        <precondition typeCode="PRCN" >
          <criterion>
            <code code="ASSERTION"
              codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4"/>
            <!-- joint pain -->
            <value xsi:type="CD" code="57676002"
              codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
              displayName="Joint pain"/>
          </criterion>
        </precondition>
      </substanceAdministration>
    </entryRelationship>
    <!-- Dosage to indicate timing -->
    <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP" >
      <!-- sequence -->
      <sequenceNumber value="2"/>
      <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="INT" >
        <!-- additionalInstruction / patientInstruction -->
        <text>Every day at 8 in the morning for 10 minutes</text>
        <!-- timing -->
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" operator="A" >
          <phase>
            <low value="198701010800" inclusive="true" />
            <width value="10" unit="min" />
          </phase>
        </effectiveTime>
      </substanceAdministration>
    </entryRelationship>
  </substanceAdministration>
</entry>
```

```
<period value="1" unit="d"/>
</effectiveTime>
<!-- route -->
<routeCode code="C38288" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1" codeSystemName="NCI Thesaurus" displayName="Oral"/>
<!-- dose -->
<doseQuantity value="1" />
<consumable>
  <manufacturedProduct>
    <manufacturedMaterial nullFlavor="NA" />
  </manufacturedProduct>
</consumable>
</substanceAdministration>
</entryRelationship>
</substanceAdministration>
</entry>

<entry>
  <!-- MedicationStatement - single instance of Dosage -->
  <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN" >
    <!-- identifier -->
    <id root="ab6d45ff-fd58-4f38-8009-aelaa84a4f43"/>
    <!-- method -->
    <ext:methodCode code="421134003" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" displayName="Inhale" />
    <!-- route -->
    <routeCode code="ORNEB" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.112" codeSystemName="Route Code" displayName="Inhalation, nebulization, oral"/>
    <!-- dose -->
    <doseQuantity value="1" />
    <!-- maxDosePerPeriod -->
    <maxDoseQuantity>
      <numerator value="1" />
      <denominator value="1" unit="h" />
    </maxDoseQuantity>
    <administrationUnitCode code="415215001" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" displayName="Puff" />
    <!-- medication.as(medicationCodeableConcept) -->
    <consumable>
      <manufacturedProduct>
        <manufacturedMaterial>
          <code code="7113011000036100" codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1004.100"
            displayName="Spiriva (tiotropium (as bromide monohydrate) 18 microgram) inhalation: powder for, 1 capsule">
            <originalText>Spiriva (tiotropium bromide 18mg per inhalant)</originalText>
          </code>
        </manufacturedMaterial>
      </manufacturedProduct>
    </consumable>
    <!-- asNeededBoolean=true - instantiated as prn with no specified condition -->
    <precondition typeCode="PRCN" >
      <criterion>
        <code code="ASSERTION" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4" />
        <value xsi:type="CD" nullFlavor="NI" />
      </criterion>
    </precondition>
  </substanceAdministration>
</entry>
```

A.7 Timing

This informative appendix provides some guidance on how the complex data type [Timing](#), referenced in the body of this specification can map to CDA (R2). The mappings provided are a set of possible mappings and do not represent conformance requirements.

CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Timing	Specifies an event that may occur multiple times. Timing schedules are used to record when things are planned, expected or requested to occur. The most common usage is in dosage instructions for medications. They are also used when planning care of various kinds, and may be used for reporting the schedule to which past regular activities were carried out.	Cardinality comes from linking parent.	Element	//effectiveTime	See <time> for available attributes.
Timing > event	Identifies specific times when the event occurs.	0..1	dateTime	//effectiveTime/@value	
Timing > repeat	A set of rules that describe when the event is scheduled.	0..1	Element	//effectiveTime/@xsi:type	<p>Not mapped directly; implicit in the instantiation of the xsi:type, e.g. PIVL_TS or EIVL_TS, and the mapping of the child elements.</p> <p>If duration is present, durationUnit SHALL be present.</p> <p>If timeOfDay is present, when SHALL NOT be present.</p> <p>If period is present, periodUnit SHALL be present.</p> <p>duration SHALL be a non-negative value.</p> <p>period SHALL be a non-negative value.</p> <p>If periodMax is present, period SHALL be present.</p> <p>If offset is present, when SHALL be present.</p>
Timing > repeat > bounds	Either a duration for the length of the timing schedule, a range of possible length, or outer bounds for start and/or end limits of the timing schedule.	0..1	Duration Range Period	See: instantiation choices	<p>effectiveTime/@xsi:type SHALL be "IVL_TS".</p> <p>instantiation choices:</p> <p>If bounds is a Duration then it is expected to be instantiated as //effectiveTime/width.</p> <p>If bounds is a Range then it is expected to be included in Dosage as text, or additionalInstruction, or patientInstruction as appropriate.</p> <p>If bounds is a Period then it is expected to be instantiated as //effectiveTime/period.</p>
Timing > repeat > count	A total count of the desired number of repetitions.	0..1	integer	//repeatNumber/@value	count SHALL only be instantiated in the repeatNumber element of the Dosage substanceAdministration act where the moodCode is "INT" or "PLAN".

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Timing > repeat > countMax	A maximum value for the count of the desired repetitions (e.g. do something 6-8 times).	0..1	integer	//repeatNumber/high/@value	
Timing > repeat > duration	How long this thing happens for when it happens.	0..1	decimal	//effectiveTime/phase/width/@value	effectiveTime/@xsi:type SHOULD be "PIVL_TS".
Timing > repeat > durationMax	The upper limit of how long this thing happens for when it happens.	0..1	decimal	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Timing > repeat > durationUnit	The units of time for the duration, in UCUM units.	0..1	code	//effectiveTime/phase/width/@unit	effectiveTime/@xsi:type SHOULD be "PIVL_TS".
Timing > repeat > frequency	The number of times to repeat the action within the specified period / period range (i.e. both period and periodMax provided).	0..1	integer	//effectiveTime/frequency	effectiveTime/@xsi:type SHALL be "PIVL_TS".
				//effectiveTime/frequency/numerator	frequency is expressed as the numerator (with an xsi:type of "INT") and period is expressed in CDA as the denominator. frequency is often not included in CDA as a separate element but addressed by adjusting the values of period and periodUnit to take into account frequency.
Timing > repeat > frequencyMax	If present, indicates that the frequency is a range - so to repeat between [frequency] and [frequencyMax] times within the period or period range.	0..1	integer	//effectiveTime/phase	effectiveTime/@xsi:type SHOULD be "PIVL_TS".
Timing > repeat > period	Indicates the duration of time over which repetitions are to occur; e.g. to express '3 times per day', 3 would be the frequency and '1 day' would be the period.	0..1	decimal	See: instantiation choices	effectiveTime/@xsi:type SHOULD be "PIVL_TS". instantiation choices: May be represented by //effectiveTime/phase or //effectiveTime/period.
Timing > repeat > periodMax	If present, indicates that the period is a range from [period] to [periodMax], allowing expressing concepts such as 'do this once every 3-5 days.'	0..1	decimal	See: instantiation choices	effectiveTime/@xsi:type SHOULD be "PIVL_TS". instantiation choices: May be represented by //effectiveTime/phase or //effectiveTime/period/high.
Timing > repeat > periodUnit	The units of time for the period in UCUM units.	0..1	code	See: instantiation choices	effectiveTime/@xsi:type SHOULD be "PIVL_TS". instantiation choices: May be represented by //effectiveTime/phase/@unit or //effectiveTime/period/low/@unit or //effectiveTime/period/high/@unit.
Timing > repeat > dayOfWeek	If one or more days of week is provided, then the action happens only on the specified day(s).	0..*	code	//effectiveTime/@xsi:type="PIVL_TS"	The value between low and high represents the day of the week by selecting a known day. For example a low/@value of 20001202 and a high/@value of 20001203 represents Saturday by setting the period to the whole of the Saturday of the 2nd of December 2000.
				//effectiveTime/@alignment="DW"	
				//effectiveTime/phase	
				//effectiveTime/phase/low/@value	
				//effectiveTime/phase/low/@inclusive="true"	
				//effectiveTime/phase/high/@value	
				//effectiveTime/phase/high/@inclusive="false"	

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Timing > repeat > timeOfDay	Specified time of day for action to take place.	0..*	time	//effectiveTime/ phase	effectiveTime/@xsi:type SHOULD be "PIVL_TS".
				//effectiveTime/ phase/low	
				//effectiveTime/ phase/low/@value	
Timing > repeat > when	Real world events that the occurrence of the event should be tied to.	0..*	code	//effectiveTime/ event	effectiveTime/@xsi:type SHALL be "EIVL_TS". This CDA schema element is of type CodedSimpleValue (CS). EventTiming (required)
Timing > repeat > offset	The number of minutes from the event. If the event code does not indicate whether the minutes is before or after the event, then the offset is assumed to be after the event.	0..1	unsignedInt	//effectiveTime/ offset	effectiveTime/@xsi:type SHALL be "EIVL_TS".
Timing > code	A code for the timing schedule. Some codes such as BID are ubiquitous, but many institutions define their own additional codes. If a code is provided, the code is understood to be a complete statement of whatever is specified in the structured timing data, and either the code or the data may be used to interpret the Timing, with the exception that .repeat.bounds still applies over the code (and is not contained in the code).	0..1	CodeableConcept	n/a	Not directly supported in CDA; implied by frequency.

Example A.7. Timing

```
<!-- These example fragments are illustrative only. They cannot be treated as clinically valid.  
While every effort has been taken to ensure that the examples are consistent with the message specification, where  
there are conflicts with the written message specification or schema, the specification or schema will take precedence. -->  
  
<!-- Dosage to indicate timing -->  
<entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">  
    <!-- sequence -->  
    <sequenceNumber value="2"/>  
    <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="INT">  
        <!-- additionalInstruction / patientInstruction -->  
        <text>Every day at 8 in the morning for 10 minutes</text>  
        <!-- timing, 1st administered 2009-09-01 at 1:18am and to be taken every day at 8 in the morning for 10 minutes -->  
        <!-- event -->  
        <effectiveTime value="200509010118"/>  
        <!-- repeat -->  
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" operator="A">  
            <phase>  
                <!-- boundsPeriod / timeOfDay -->  
                <low value="200509020800" inclusive="true"/>  
                <!-- duration and durationUnit -->  
                <width value="10" unit="min"/>  
            </phase>  
            <!-- frequency=1, period=1 -->  
            <period value="1" unit="d"/>  
        </effectiveTime>  
        <consumable>  
            <manufacturedProduct>  
                <manufacturedMaterial nullFlavor="NA"/>  
            </manufacturedProduct>  
        </consumable>  
    </substanceAdministration>  
</entryRelationship>  
  
<entry>  
    <!-- MedicationStatement - common timing representations - this is not a meaningful example and is there to show common instantiations  
and their corresponding code -->  
    <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">  
        <!--identifier-->  
        <id root="7e5cc411-c248-4d5d-b333-257f16f9136c"/>  
        <!-- common timing representations taken from https://docs.google.com/document/d/1Y0Z458o_MrR2aPnpx6EygO6hpI88B195esjRWZ0agtY/edit -->  
        <!-- b.i.d twice a day -->  
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="true" operator="A">  
            <!-- frequency=2, period=1, periodUnit=d -->  
            <period value="0.5" unit="d"/>  
        </effectiveTime>  
        <!-- q12h Every 12 hours -->  
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="false"  
            operator="A">  
            <!-- frequency=1, period=12, periodUnit=h -->  
            <period value="12" unit="h"/>  
        </effectiveTime>  
        <!-- t.i.d Three times a day, at times determined by the person administering the medication-->  
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="true"  
            operator="A">  
            <!-- frequency=3, period=1, periodUnit=d -->  
            <period value="0.3333" unit="d"/>  
        </effectiveTime>  
        <!-- q8h Every 8 hours -->
```

```
<effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="false"
  operator="A">
  <!-- frequency=1, period=8, periodUnit=h -->
  <period value="8" unit="h"/>
</effectiveTime>
<!!--qid four times daily-->
<effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="true"
  operator="A">
  <!-- frequency=4, period=1, periodUnit=d -->
  <period value="0.25" unit="d"/>
</effectiveTime>
<!!-- q6h Every 6 hours -->
<effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="false"
  operator="A">
  <!-- frequency=1, period=6, periodUnit=h -->
  <period value="6" unit="h"/>
</effectiveTime>
<!!-- qd daily -->
<effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="true"
  operator="A">
  <!-- frequency=1, period=1, periodUnit=d -->
  <period value="1" unit="d"/>
</effectiveTime>
<!!-- q24h Every 24 hours -->
<effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="false"
  operator="A">
  <!-- frequency=1, period=24, periodUnit=h -->
  <period value="24" unit="h"/>
</effectiveTime>
<!!-- god Every other day -->
<effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="false"
  operator="A">
  <!-- frequency=1, period=2, periodUnit=d -->
  <period value="2" unit="d"/>
</effectiveTime>
<!!-- qm Once a month -->
<effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="false"
  operator="A">
  <!-- frequency=1, period=1, periodUnit=mo -->
  <period value="1" unit="m"/>
</effectiveTime>
<!!-- q4-6h Every 4 to 6 hours (preferred) -->
<effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="false"
  operator="A">
  <!-- frequency (where frequency=1)-->
  <period xsi:type="IVL_PQ">
    <!-- period and periodUnit -->
    <low value="4" unit="h" />
    <!-- periodMax and periodUnit -->
    <high value="6" unit="h" />
  </period>
</effectiveTime>
<!!-- q4-6h Every 4 to 6 hours (alternate) -->
<effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="false"
  operator="A">
  <period xsi:type="PPD_PQ" value="5" unit="h">
    <standardDeviation value="1" unit="h"/>
  </period>
</effectiveTime>
<!!-- gam In the morning -->
<effectiveTime xsi:type="EIVL_TS" operator="A">
  <!-- when using code from TimingEvent value set (2.16.840.1.113883.5.139) -->
  <event code="ACM"/>
```

```
</effectiveTime>
<!-- qam Every day at 8 in the morning for 10 minutes -->
<effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" operator="A">
  <phase>
    <!-- boundsPeriod / timeOfDay -->
    <low value="198701010800" inclusive="true"/>
    <!-- duration and durationUnit -->
    <width value="10" unit="min"/>
  </phase>
  <period value="1" unit="d"/>
</effectiveTime>
<!-- 1 hour after meal -->
<effectiveTime xsi:type="EIVL_TS" operator="A">
  <!-- when using code from TimingEvent value set (2.16.840.1.113883.5.139) -->
  <event code="PC"/>
  <!-- offset -->
  <offset>
    <low value="1" unit="h" />
  </offset>
</effectiveTime>
<!-- before dinner -->
<effectiveTime xsi:type="EIVL_TS" operator="A">
  <!-- when using code from TimingEvent value set (2.16.840.1.113883.5.139) -->
  <event code="ACV"/>
</effectiveTime>
<!-- before lunch -->
<effectiveTime xsi:type="EIVL_TS" operator="A">
  <!-- when using code from TimingEvent value set (2.16.840.1.113883.5.139) -->
  <event code="ACD"/>
</effectiveTime>
<!-- every evening -->
<effectiveTime xsi:type="EIVL_TS" operator="A">
  <!-- when using code from TimingEvent value set (2.16.840.1.113883.5.139) -->
  <event code="ICV"/>
</effectiveTime>
<effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" alignment="DW" operator="A">
  <!-- every Saturday -->
  <phase>
    <low value="20001202" inclusive="true"/>
    <high value="20001203" inclusive="false"/>
  </phase>
  <period value="1" unit="wk"/>
</effectiveTime>
<consumable>
  <manufacturedProduct>
    <manufacturedMaterial>
      <code nullFlavor="NA"/>
    </manufacturedMaterial>
  </manufacturedProduct>
</consumable>
</substanceAdministration>
</entry>
```

A.8 CodeableConcept as a Medicine Item Code

This informative appendix provides some guidance on how the complex data type [CodeableConcept](#) as a medicine item code (and related elements medication-brand-name and medication-generic-name), referenced in the body of this specification can map to CDA (R2). The mappings provided are a set of preferred mappings and do not represent conformance requirements.

In addition to examples provided in this implementation guide some guidance on representing coding in CDA is provided by [Representing Coding in CDA Documents Implementation Guidance \[NEHT2011bv\]](#).

Where brand name is known, it will form part of the originalText of the medicine item code (e.g. manufacturedProduct/manufacturedMaterial/code/@originalText), and optionally be in medication-brand-name (//entryRelationship[brand]/act/text).

It may be appropriate to send multiple codings for a medicine item code, in this circumstance the primary code may be carried in the medicine item code (code/@code) and additional coding sent as one or more translations (code/translation/code/@code).

When sending a medication without a coded value:

- the medicine item code should only be supplied as code/@originalText (e.g. as manufacturedProduct/manufacturedMaterial/code/@originalText)
- if both brand name and generic name can be sent, brand name will be sent as stated above; generic name will be sent only in medication-generic-name (//entryRelationship[generic]/act)
- if only generic name can be sent, it will form part of the originalText of the medicine item code (e.g. manufacturedProduct/manufacturedMaterial/code/@originalText), and optionally be in medication-generic-name (//entryRelationship[generic]/act)
- if a name can be sent, but it cannot be determined if it is a brand or generic name, the name will form part of the originalText of the medicine item code (e.g. manufacturedProduct/manufacturedMaterial/code/@originalText)
- if a name is not known but a meaningful description or formula can be sent, the description form part of the originalText of the medicine item code (e.g. manufacturedProduct/manufacturedMaterial/code/@originalText)

Example A.8. CodeableConcept as Medicine Item Code

```
<!-- These example fragments are illustrative only. They cannot be treated as clinically valid.  
While every effort has been taken to ensure that the examples are consistent with the message specification, where  
there are conflicts with the written message specification or schema, the specification or schema will take precedence. -->  
  
<!-- Medication with coded brand -->  
<supply classCode="SPLY" moodCode="EVN">  
  <id root="9ff3422e-4e8c-4133-8cc9-6de74ecfac48"/>  
  <product>  
    <manufacturedProduct>  
      <manufacturedMaterial>
```

```
<code code="17311000168105" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" displayName="Panadol">
  <originalText>Panadol</originalText>
</code>
</manufacturedMaterial>
</manufacturedProduct>
</product>
<!-- medication-brand-name-->
<entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
  <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
    <code code="TBD" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" displayName="Brand Name"/>
    <text>Panadol</text>
  </act>
</entryRelationship>
</supply>

<!-- Medication with mutliple codings -->
<substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
  <consumable>
    <manufacturedProduct>
      <manufacturedMaterial>
        <code code="28236011000036109" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" displayName="amoxicillin 250 mg capsule, 20">
          <translation code="1884E" codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1005.22" codeSystemName="Australian PBS Code" displayName="amoxicillin 250 mg capsule, 20"/>
        </code>
      </manufacturedMaterial>
    </manufacturedProduct>
  </consumable>
</substanceAdministration>

<!-- Medication without a coded value -->
<supply classCode="SPLY" moodCode="RQO">
  <product>
    <manufacturedProduct>
      <manufacturedMaterial>
        <code>
          <originalText>RIVAROXABAN</originalText>
        </code>
      </manufacturedMaterial>
    </manufacturedProduct>
  </product>
</supply>

<!-- Medication with both brand name and generic name and no coded value -->
<substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
  <id root="67425d8f-7929-4a10-9acc-c06981e38d6a"/>
  <consumable>
    <manufacturedProduct>
      <manufacturedMaterial>
        <code>
          <originalText>Valpam</originalText>
        </code>
      </manufacturedMaterial>
    </manufacturedProduct>
  </consumable>
  <!-- medication-brand-name-->
<entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
  <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
    <code code="TBD" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" displayName="Brand Name"/>
    <text>Valpam</text>
  </act>
</entryRelationship>
<!-- medication-generic-name-->
<entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
```

```
<act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
  <code code="TBD" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" displayName="Generic Name"/>
  <text>Diazepam</text>
</act>
</entryRelationship>
</substanceAdministration>

<!-- Medication with generic name and no coded value -->
<substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
  <consumable>
    <manufacturedProduct>
      <manufacturedMaterial>
        <code>
          <originalText>Valpam</originalText>
        </code>
      </manufacturedMaterial>
    </manufacturedProduct>
  </consumable>
  <!-- medication-generic-name-->
  <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
    <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
      <code code="TBD" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" displayName="Generic Name"/>
      <text>Valpam</text>
    </act>
  </entryRelationship>
</substanceAdministration>
```


Appendix B. Examples

This informative appendix provides some examples that conform to the conformance requirements specified within this implementation guide.

DRAFT

B.1 Event Summary example 1

This informative appendix provides an example instance that conforms to the requirements of this implementation guide.

Example B.1. Event Summary example 1

```
<!-- This example is illustrative only. This fragment cannot be treated as clinically valid.
While every effort has been taken to ensure that the examples are consistent with the message specification, where
there are conflicts with the written message specification or schema, the specification or schema will take precedence. -->
```

```
<ClinicalDocument xmlns="urn:hl7-org:v3"
  xmlns:ex="urn:hl7-org/v3-example"
  xmlns:ext="http://ns.electronichealth.net.au/Ci/Cda/Extensions/3.0"
  xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xsi:schemaLocation="urn:hl7-org:v3 ../../library/schema_au_published/CDA-AU-V1_0.xsd">
  <typeId root="2.16.840.1.113883.1.3" extension="POCD_HD000040"/>
    <!-- ClinicalDocument templateId -->
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100033" extension="1.0"/>
    <!--Event Summary document model templateId -->
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100020" extension="1.0"/>
    <!--CDA Rendering Specification templateId-->
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.100.226" extension="1.0"/>
    <!--ClinicalDocument.id-->
    <id root="830812d3-8f60-4549-8b34-c4b315f7ce33" />
    <!-- Composition.type -->
    <code code="34133-9"
      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
      codeSystemName="LOINC"
      displayName="Summary of episode note" />
    <!-- Composition.title -->
    <title>Event Summary</title>
    <effectiveTime value="20180719" />
    <confidentialityCode nullFlavor="NA" />
    <languageCode code="en-AU" />
    <!--Composition.identifier-->
    <setId root="6C6BA56C-BC92-11DE-A170-D85556D89593" />
    <!-- Composition.status -->
    <ext:completionCode code="F"
      codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101.104.20104"
      codeSystemName="NCTIS Document Status Values"
      displayName="Final" />
    <!-- Composition.subject :: recordTarget (Patient with Mandatory Identifier) -->
    <recordTarget>
      <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100004" extension="1.0"/>
      <patientRole>
        <id root="df1cf480-a2ce-419a-891e-16d7e863c6a1" />
        <patient>
          <!-- Patient.name -->
          <name>
            <given>Iliana</given>
            <family>Iglesias</family>
          </name>
          <!-- Patient.gender -->
          <administrativeGenderCode code="other"
            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.642.1.2"
            codeSystemName="AdministrativeGender"
            displayName="Other" />
          <!--Patient.birthDate-->
          <birthTime value="19600820" />
          <!-- Patient.Indigenous-Status (extension) -->
          <ethnicGroupCode code="9" codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1004.200.10012"
            codeSystemName="Australian Indigenous Status"
            displayName="Not stated/inadequately described" />
          <!-- Patient.identifier -->
          <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
            <ext:id assigningAuthorityName="IHI"
              root="1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0.8003608833357361" />
            <ext:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">
              <ext:name>National Identifier</ext:name>
            </ext:assigningGeographicArea>
          </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
        </patient>
        <!--providerOrganization (Base Organization)-->
        <providerOrganization>
          <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100034" extension="1.0"/>
          <id root="79e151f5-4138-4a51-8d87-931f8edb837c" />
          <!-- Organization.name -->
          <name>Devonport Family Medicine Clinic</name>
          <!-- Organization.telecom -->
          <telecom use="WP" value="tel:0385435556" />
          <!-- Organization.address -->
          <addr use="PST">
            <streetAddressLine>LPO Box 235</streetAddressLine>
            <city>Strahan</city>
            <state>TAS</state>
            <postalCode>7468</postalCode>
            <country>AU</country>
          </addr>
          <!-- Organization.identifier -->
          <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
        </providerOrganization>
    </recordTarget>
  </ClinicalDocument>
```

```
<ext:id root="1.2.36.51824754455"
    assigningAuthorityName="Devonport Family Medicine Clinic"/>
<ext:code code="XX" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"/>
</ext:asEntityIdentifier>
</providerOrganization>
</patientRole>
</recordTarget>

<!-- Composition.author :: author (PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier) -->
<author>
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100006" extension="1.0"/>
    <!-- Composition.date -->
    <time value="20180719"/>
    <assignedAuthor>
        <id root="d2660da4-6021-4adb-b424-53c76af5cca5"/>
        <!-- PractitionerRole.code -->
        <code code="253111"
            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.13.62"
            displayName="General Practitioner">
            <originalText>GP</originalText>
        </code>
        <!-- Practitioner.telecom -->
        <telecom use="WP" value="mailto:bhelpman@example.devonportgp.com.au"/>
        <!-- PractitionerRole.practitioner -->
        <assignedPerson>
            <!-- assignedPerson (Base Practitioner) -->
            <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100040" extension="1.0"/>
            <!-- Practitioner.name -->
            <name use="L">
                <given>Barry</given>
                <family>Helpman</family>
                <suffix qualifier="AC">M.D.</suffix>
            </name>
            <!-- PractitionerRole.identifier or Practitioner.identifier -->
            <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
                <ext:id root="1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0.8003619900015717"
                    assigningAuthorityName="HPI-I"/>
                <ext:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">
                    <ext:name>National Identifier</ext:name>
                </ext:assigningGeographicArea>
            </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
            <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
                <ext:id root="1.2.36.174030967.0.2"
                    extension="5544887B"
                    assigningAuthorityName="Medicare Provider Number"/>
                <ext:code code="PRN" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"/>
                <ext:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">
                    <ext:name>National Identifier</ext:name>
                </ext:assigningGeographicArea>
            </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
        </assignedPerson>
        <!-- PractitionerRole.organization -->
        <representedOrganization>
            <!-- representedOrganization (Base Organization) -->
            <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100039" extension="1.0"/>
            <id root="42c9e70e-a026-48b8-80d6-4d17a11b4ee6"/>
            <!-- Organization.name -->
            <name>Devonport Family Medicine Clinic</name>
            <!-- Organization.telecom -->
            <telecom use="WP" value="mailto:reception@example.dfmfc.com.au"/>
            <telecom use="WP" value="fax:0385435557"/>
            <telecom use="WP" value="tel:0385435556"/>
            <!-- Organization.address -->
            <addr use="PST">
                <streetAddressLine>LPO Box 235</streetAddressLine>
                <city>Strahan</city>
                <state>TAS</state>
                <postalCode>7468</postalCode>
                <country>Australia</country>
            </addr>
            <!-- Organization.identifier -->
            <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
                <ext:id root="1.2.36.51824754455"
                    assigningAuthorityName="Devonport Family Medicine Clinic"/>
                <ext:code code="XX" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"/>
            </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
        </representedOrganization>
    </assignedAuthor>
</author>

<!-- custodian (Organization with Mandatory Identifier) -->
<custodian>
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100002" extension="1.0"/>
    <assignedCustodian>
        <representedCustodianOrganization>
            <id root="42c9e70e-a026-48b8-80d6-4d17a11b4ee6"/>
            <!-- Organization.name -->
            <name>Devonport Family Medicine Clinic</name>
            <!-- Organization.telecom -->
            <telecom use="WP" value="tel:0385435556"/>
            <!-- Organization.address -->
            <addr use="PST">
                <streetAddressLine>LPO Box 235</streetAddressLine>
                <city>Strahan</city>
                <state>TAS</state>
                <postalCode>7468</postalCode>
                <country>AU</country>
            </addr>
            <!-- Organization.identifier -->

```

```

<ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
    <ext:id root="1.2.36.51824754455"
        assigningAuthorityName="Devonport Family Medicine Clinic"/>
    <ext:code code="XX" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"/>
</ext:asEntityIdentifier>
</representedCustodianOrganization>
</assignedCustodian>
</custodian>

<!-- attester (Legal Attester)-->
<legalAuthenticator>
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100012" extension="1.0"/>
    <time value="20180719"/>
    <signatureCode code="S"/>
    <assignedEntity>
        <!-- attester (Legal Attester) indicating same entity as the author via the same id -->
        <id root="d2660da4-6021-4adb-b424-53c76af5cca5"/>
    <assignedPerson>
        <name>
            <given>Barry</given>
            <family>Helpman</family>
            <suffix qualifier="AC">M.D.</suffix>
        </name>
        <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
            <ext:id root="1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0.8003619900015717"
                assigningAuthorityName="HPI-I"/>
            <ext:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">
                <ext:name>National Identifier</ext:name>
            </ext:assigningGeographicArea>
        </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
        <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
            <ext:id root="1.2.36.174030967.0.2"
                extension="5544887B"
                assigningAuthorityName="Medicare Provider Number"/>
            <ext:code code="PRN" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"/>
            <ext:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">
                <ext:name>National Identifier</ext:name>
            </ext:assigningGeographicArea>
        </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
        </assignedPerson>
        </assignedEntity>
    </legalAuthenticator>

<!-- Patient.generalPractitioner (Base Practitioner) -->
<participant typeCode="PART">
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100037" extension="1.0"/>
    <functionCode code="PCP"/>
    <associatedEntity classCode="PROV">
        <id root="ad9f414d-0034-4alc-998a-bc01cc7e5619"/>
        <associatedPerson>
            <!-- Practitioner.name -->
            <name>
                <prefix>Dr.</prefix>
                <given>Francis</given>
                <family>Smith</family>
            </name>
            </associatedPerson>
        </associatedEntity>
    </participant>

<!-- Composition.encounter -->
<componentOf>
<!--encompassingEncounter (Summary of an Encounter for an Event)-->
    <encompassingEncounter>
        <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100064" extension="1.0"/>
        <id root="3a9c6d4b-9e82-4096-b88c-100b2e824961"/>
        <!--Encounter.period-->
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="IVL_TS">
            <low value="20180719090000+1000"/>
            <high value="20180719091500+1000"/>
        </effectiveTime>
    </encompassingEncounter>
</componentOf>

<component>
    <structuredBody>

        <!-- Administrative Observations -->
        <component>
            <section>
                <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100000" extension="1.0"/>
                <id root="bd166803-0582-434d-9b76-6d0f9d793809"/>
                <!-- section.code -->
                <code code="102.16080"
                    codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
                    codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
                    displayName="Administrative Observations"/>
                <!-- section.title -->
                <title>Administrative Observations</title>
                <!-- Patient.date-accuracy-indicator (extension)-->
                <entry>
                    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                        <id root="d854d684-de46-437f-997e-bb7a73a08b83"/>
                        <code code="102.16234" codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
                            codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
                            displayName="Date of Birth Accuracy Indicator"/>
                        <value code="AAE" xsi:type="CS"/>
                    </observation>
                </entry>
            </section>
        </component>
    </structuredBody>

```

```
<!--Practitioner.qualification-->
<ext:coverage2>
  <ext:templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100038" extension="1.0"/>
  <ext:entitlement classCode="COV" moodCode="EVN">
    <ext:id root="1.2.36.1.2001.1005.56" extension="MED0000932850"
      assigningAuthorityName="AHPPRA"/>
    <ext:code code="253111" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.13.62"
      displayName="General Medical Practitioner">
      <originalText>AHPPRA qualification for General Practitioner</originalText>
    </ext:code>
    <ext:participant>
      <ext:participantRole>
        <!-- matching technical id for the Practitioner entity -->
        <ext:id root="d2660da4-6021-4adb-b424-53c76af5cca5"/>
      </ext:participantRole>
    </ext:participant>
  </ext:entitlement>
</ext:coverage2>
</section>
</component>

<!-- section (Event Overview) -->
<component>
  <section>
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100059" extension="1.0"/>
    <id root="64c31179-53c2-42c2-a1d8-0288b77c4bb6"/>
    <!-- section (Event Overview).code -->
    <code code="101.16672"
      codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
      codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
      displayName="Event Overview"/>
    <!-- section (Event Overview).title -->
    <title>Event Details</title>
    <!-- section (Event Overview).text -->
    <text mediaType="text/x-hl7-text+xml">
      <paragraph styleCode="bold">Presentation date</paragraph>: 19 July 2018 09:00
      <paragraph styleCode="bold">Encounter Description</paragraph>: <paragraph>Patient presented with a headache, fever, sore throat. Patient advised she has no known allergies and was prescribed amoxicillin 500mg 3/day for 5 days, and augmentin forte 1 tablet twice a day for five days during this event. Patient advised that usually takes sumatriptan for migraine; they took one tablet during the event, and during the event they were given one tablet to take home.</paragraph>
    </text>
    <!--encounter (Summary of Encounter for an Event)-->
    <entry>
      <encounter classCode="ENC" moodCode="EVN">
        <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100062" extension="1.0"/>
        <id root="3a9c6d4b-9e82-4096-b88c-100b2e824961"/>
        <!--Encounter.encounter-description-->
        <text>Patient presented with a headache, fever, sore throat.
          Patient advised she has no known allergies and was prescribed amoxicillin 500mg 3/day for 5 days, and augmentin forte 1 tablet twice a day for five days during this event. Patient advised that usually takes sumatriptan for migraine; they took one tablet during the event, and during the event they were given one tablet to take home.</text>
        <!--Encounter.status-->
        <statusCode code="finished"/>
        <!--Encounter.period-->
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="IVL_TS">
          <low value="20180719090000+1000"/>
          <high value="20180719091500+1000"/>
        </effectiveTime>
      </encounter>
    </entry>
  </section>
</component>

<!-- section (Allergies) -->
<component>
  <section>
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100069" extension="1.0"/>
    <id root="ad9bc4ce-36fa-4792-af28-a53a03c9a200"/>
    <!-- section (Allergies).code -->
    <code code="48765-2"
      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
      codeSystemName="LOINC"
      displayName="Allergies &or adverse reactions"/>
    <!-- section (Allergies).title -->
    <title>Allergies and Adverse Reactions</title>
    <!-- section (Allergies).text -->
    <text mediaType="text/x-hl7-text+xml">
      <paragraph>No known allergies.</paragraph>
    </text>
    <!--observation (Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance)-->
    <entry>
      <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
        <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100014" extension="1.0"/>
        <code code="102.05517"
          codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
          codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
          displayName="Adverse Reaction">
        </code>
        <!--AllergyIntolerance.code-->
        <value xsi:type="CD"
          code="716186003"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
          codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
          displayName="No known allergy">
          <originalText>No known allergies</originalText>
        </value>
        <!--AllergyIntolerance.clinical-Status-->
        <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
          <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
```

```
<code code="103.32013"
      codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
      codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
      displayName="Clinical Status"/>
<value code="active"
      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.642.1.118"
      codeSystemName="AllergyIntoleranceClinicalStatus"
      displayName="Active"
      xsi:type="CD"/>
</observation>
<!--AllergyIntolerance.verification-Status-->
</entryRelationship>
<entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
  <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
    <code code="103.32012"
          codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
          codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
          displayName="Verification Status"/>
    <value code="confirmed"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.642.1.116"
          codeSystemName="AllergyIntoleranceVerificationStatus"
          displayName="Confirmed"
          xsi:type="CD"/>
    </observation>
  </entryRelationship>
</observation>
</entry>
</section>
</component>

<!-- section (Medications) -->
<component>
  <section>
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100061" extension="1.0"/>
    <id root="275e7d93-37f9-4b67-895b-ab6b5b7627b6"/>
    <!-- section (Medications).code -->
    <code code="10160-0" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
          codeSystemName="LOINC"
          displayName="History of Medication use Narrative"/>
    <!-- section (Medications).title -->
    <title>Medications</title>
    <!-- section (Medications).text -->
    <text mediaType="text/x-hl7+text+xml">
      <table border="1">
        <caption>Medicines List</caption>
        <thead>
          <tr>
            <th>Medicine</th>
            <th>Directions</th>
            <th>Clinical Indication/Change description</th>
            <th>Status</th>
          </tr>
        </thead>
        <tbody>
          <tr ID="c55f2a65-2b63-4ee2-970e-4779e8722f78">
            <td><content styleCode="bold">amoxicillin</content> 500 mg - capsule</td>
            <td>Take 3 tablets a day for 5 days.</td>
            <td>For headache, fever, sore throat.</td>
            <td>New prescription</td>
          </tr>
          <tr ID="ffad0931-a062-4d74-8cc3-9e8836f51ba3">
            <td><content styleCode="bold">Augmentin Duo Forte</content> 875/125 - tablet</td>
            <td>Take 1 tablet twice a day for 5 days.</td>
            <td>For headache, fever, sore throat.</td>
            <td>New prescription</td>
          </tr>
          <tr ID="ed58490f-903c-4b8b-af6f-d30fad3df7e8">
            <td><content styleCode="bold">sumatriptan</content> 100 mg - tablet</td>
            <td>As required</td>
            <td>For migraine.</td>
            <td>Unchanged</td>
          </tr>
        </tbody>
      </table>
    </text>
    <!-- act (List of Medicine Changes from an Event)-->
    <entry>
      <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
        <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100063" extension="1.0"/>
        <!--List.code-->
        <code code="10160-0"
              codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
              codeSystemName="LOINC"
              displayName="History of Medication use Narrative"/>
        <!--List.status-->
        <statusCode code="active"/>
        <!-- substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Known Medicine); taken=n -->
        <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
          <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
            <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100015" extension="1.0"/>
            <id root="dc62bf6a-8843-4a89-9a89-713f686ee8e1"/>
            <!-- MedicationStatement.dosage -->
            <text>
              <reference value="#c55f2a65-2b63-4ee2-970e-4779e8722f78"/>
            </text>
            <!-- MedicationStatement.status -->
            <statusCode code="new"/>
            <!-- MedicationStatement.medication -->
            <consumable>
```

```
<manufacturedProduct>
  <manufacturedMaterial>
    <code code="23551011000036108"
      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
      codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
      displayName="amoxicillin 500 mg capsule">
      <originalText>amoxicillin 500 mg capsule</originalText>
    </code>
  </manufacturedMaterial>
</manufacturedProduct>
</consumable>
<!-- MedicationStatement.reasonCode -->
<entryRelationship typeCode="RSON">
  <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
    <code code="103.10141"
      codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
      codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
      displayName="Clinical Indication">
      <value xsi:type = "CD">
        <originalText>headache, fever and sore throat</originalText>
      </value>
    </observation>
  </entryRelationship>
<!--List.entry.flag-->
<entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ" inversionInd="true">
  <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
    <code code="288533004"
      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
      codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
      displayName="Change values"/>
    <!--List.change-description-->
    <text>Prescription for headache, fever, sore throat</text>
    <value code="prescribed"
      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.2.3.4.1.2.6"
      codeSystemName="MedicineItemChange"
      displayName="New prescription"
      xsi:type="CD"/>
  </observation>
  </entryRelationship>
</substanceAdministration>
</entryRelationship>
<!-- substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Known Medicine); taken=n -->
<entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
<substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
<templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100015" extension="1.0"/>
<id root="b438ef4b-d768-4dda-a1b8-092f0ce2279c"/>
  <!-- MedicationStatement.dosage -->
  <text>
    <reference value="#ffad0931-a062-4d74-8cc3-9e8836f51ba3"/>
  </text>
  <!-- MedicationStatement.status -->
  <statusCode code="new"/>
  <!-- MedicationStatement.medication -->
  <consumable>
    <manufacturedProduct>
      <manufacturedMaterial>
        <code code="6052011000036107"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
          codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
          displayName="Augmentin Duo Forte 875/125 film-coated tablet">
          <originalText>Augmentin Duo Forte 875/125 film-coated tablet</originalText>
        </code>
      </manufacturedMaterial>
    </manufacturedProduct>
  </consumable>
  <!-- MedicationStatement.reasonCode -->
  <entryRelationship typeCode="RSON">
    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
      <code code="103.10141"
        codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
        codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
        displayName="Clinical Indication">
      <code>
        <value xsi:type = "CD">
          <originalText>headache, fever and sore throat</originalText>
        </value>
      </code>
    </observation>
  </entryRelationship>
<!--List.flag-->
<entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ" inversionInd="true">
  <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
    <code code="288533004"
      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
      codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
      displayName="Change values"/>
    <!--List.change-description-->
    <text>Prescription for headache, fever, sore throat</text>
    <value code="new"
      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.2.3.4.1.2.6"
      codeSystemName="MedicineItemChange"
      displayName="New"
      xsi:type="CD"/>
  </observation>
  </entryRelationship>
</substanceAdministration>
</entryRelationship>
<!-- substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Known Medicine); taken=y -->
<entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
  <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
```

```
<templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100015" extension="1.0"/>
<id root="ed911568-9b57-4d53-8f38-9b92ca8d20dd"/>
<!-- MedicationStatement.dosage -->
<text>
    <reference value="#ed58490f-903c-4b8b-af6f-d30fad3df7e8"/>
</text>
<!-- MedicationStatement.status -->
<statusCode code="active"/>
<!-- MedicationStatement.medication -->
<consumable>
    <manufacturedProduct>
        <manufacturedMaterial>
            <code code="45219011000036101"
                codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
                codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
                displayName="sumatriptan 100 mg tablet">
                <originalText>sumatriptan 100 mg tablet</originalText>
            </code>
        </manufacturedMaterial>
    </manufacturedProduct>
</consumable>
<!-- MedicationStatement.reasonCode -->
<entryRelationship typeCode="RSON">
    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
        <code code="103.10141"
            codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
            codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
            displayName="Clinical Indication"/>
        <value xsi:type = "CD">
            <originalText>Migraine</originalText>
        </value>
    </observation>
</entryRelationship>
<!--MedicationStatement.note-->
<entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
    <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
        <code code="103.16044"
            codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
            codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
            displayName="Additional Comments"/>
        <text>Patient advised that usually takes sumatriptan for migraine; they took one
            tablet during the event, and during the event they were given one tablet to take home.</text>
    </act>
</entryRelationship>
<!--List.entry.flag-->
<entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ" inversionInd="true">
    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
        <code code="288533004"
            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
            codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
            displayName="Change values"/>
        <!--List.change-description-->
        <text>Migraine</text>
        <value code="nochange"
            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.2.3.4.1.2.6"
            codeSystemName="MedicineItemChange"
            displayName="Unchanged"
            xsi:type="CD"/>
    </observation>
</entryRelationship>
</substanceAdministration>
</entryRelationship>
</act>
</entry>
</section>
</component>
</structuredBody>
</component>
</ClinicalDocument>
```

B.2 Event Summary example 2

This informative appendix provides an example instance that conforms to the requirements of this implementation guide.

Example B.2. Event Summary example 2

```
<!-- This example is illustrative only. This fragment cannot be treated as clinically valid.  
While every effort has been taken to ensure that the examples are consistent with the message specification, where  
there are conflicts with the written message specification or schema, the specification or schema will take precedence. -->
```

```
<ClinicalDocument classCode="DOCCLIN" moodCode="EVN" xmlns="urn:h17-org:v3"  
xmlns:ex="urn:h17-org/v3-example"  
xmlns:ext="http://ns.electronichealth.net.au/Ci/Cda/Extensions/3.0"  
xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"  
xsi:schemaLocation="urn:h17-org:v3 ../../library/schema_au_published/CDA-AU-V1_0.xsd">  
<typeId root="2.16.840.1.113883.1.3" extension="POCD_HD000040"/>  
<!-- Put content here -->  
</ClinicalDocument>
```

B.3 Event Summary example 3

This informative appendix provides an example instance that conforms to the requirements of this implementation guide.

Example B.3. Event Summary example 3

```
<!-- This example is illustrative only. This fragment cannot be treated as clinically valid.
While every effort has been taken to ensure that the examples are consistent with the message specification, where
there are conflicts with the written message specification or schema, the specification or schema will take precedence. -->

<ClinicalDocument classCode="DOCCLIN" moodCode="EVN" xmlns="urn:hl7-org:v3"
  xmlns:ex="urn:hl7-org:v3-example"
  xmlns:ext="http://ns.electronichealth.net.au/Ci/Cda/Extensions/3.0"
  xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xsi:schemaLocation="urn:hl7-org:v3 ../../library/schema_au_published/CDA-AU-V1_0.xsd">

<typeId root="2.16.840.1.113883.1.3" extension="POCD_HD000040"/>
  <!-- ClinicalDocument templateId -->
  <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100033" extension="1.0"/>
  <!-- Event Summary document model templateId -->
  <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100020" extension="1.0"/>
  <!-- CDA Rendering Specification templateId-->
  <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.100.226" extension="1.0"/>
  <id root="f292365afea5-4d5a-969e-179e763c6810" />
  <!-- Composition.type -->
  <code code="34133-9"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
    codeSystemName="LOINC"
    displayName="Summary of episode note" />
  <!-- Composition.title -->
  <title>Event Summary</title>
  <effectiveTime value="201606071639+1000" />
  <confidentialityCode nullFlavor="NA" />
  <languageCode code="en-AU" />
  <!-- Composition.status -->
  <ext:completionCode code="F"
    codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101.104.20104"
    codeSystemName="NCTIS Document Status Values"
    displayName="Final" />

  <!-- Composition.subject :: recordTarget (Patient with Mandatory Identifier) -->
  <recordTarget typeCode="RCT">
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100004" extension="1.0"/>
    <patientRole classCode="PAT">
      <id root="f793801a-614c-4f3e-b6a1-5a453c616607" />
      <patient>
        <!-- Patient.name -->
        <name>
          <given>Gough</given>
          <family>Goodpatient</family>
        </name>
        <!-- Patient.gender -->
        <administrativeGenderCode code="male"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.642.1.2"
          codeSystemName="AdministrativeGender"
          displayName="Male" />
        <!-- Patient.identifier -->
        <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
          <ext:id assigningAuthorityName="Centrelink customer reference number"
            root="2.16.840.1.113883.3.879.369274" extension="307111942H" />
          <ext:code code="HC" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203" />
        </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
      </patient>
    </patientRole>
  </recordTarget>

  <!-- Composition.author :: author (PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier) -->
  <author typeCode="AUT">
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100006" extension="1.0"/>
    <!-- Composition.date -->
    <time value="20190530100000+1000" />
    <assignedAuthor>
      <id root="72fb1fc8-80fb-463c-bc92-34f2b2cf0ecd" />
      <!-- PractitionerRole.code -->
      <code code="253111"
        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.13.62"
        displayName="General Practitioner">
        <originalText>GP</originalText>
      </code>
      <!-- Practitioner.telecom -->
      <telecom use="WB" value="mailto:bhelpman@example.devonportgp.com.au" />
      <!-- PractitionerRole.practitioner -->
      <assignedPerson>
        <!-- assignedPerson (Base Practitioner) -->
        <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100040" extension="1.0"/>
        <!-- Practitioner.name -->
        <name use="L">
          <given>Barry</given>
          <family>Helpman</family>
          <suffix qualifiers="AC">M.D.</suffix>
        </name>
        <!-- PractitionerRole.identifier or Practitioner.identifier -->
    </assignedPerson>
  </author>

```

```
<ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
  <ext:id root="1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0.8003619900015717"
    assigningAuthorityName="HPI-I"/>
  <ext:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">
    <ext:name>National Identifier</ext:name>
  </ext:assigningGeographicArea>
</ext:asEntityIdentifier>
<ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
  <ext:id root="1.2.36.174030967.0.2"
    extension="5544887B"
    assigningAuthorityName="Medicare Provider Number"/>
  <ext:code code="PRN" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"/>
  <ext:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">
    <ext:name>National Identifier</ext:name>
  </ext:assigningGeographicArea>
</ext:asEntityIdentifier>
</assignedPerson>
<!-- PractitionerRole.organization -->
<representedOrganization>
  <!-- representedOrganization (Base Organization) -->
  <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100039" extension="1.0"/>
  <id root="ad89f638-ee4b-4a12-a6d8-2a3613343d7d"/>
  <!-- Organization.name -->
  <name>Devonport Family Medicine Clinic</name>
  <!-- Organization.telecom -->
  <telecom use="WP" value="mailto:reception@example.dfdc.com.au"/>
  <telecom use="WP" value="fax:0385435557"/>
  <telecom use="WP" value="tel:0385435556"/>
  <!-- Organization.address -->
  <addr use="PST">
    <streetAddressLine>LPO Box 235</streetAddressLine>
    <city>Strahan</city>
    <state>TAS</state>
    <postalCode>7468</postalCode>
    <country>Australia</country>
  </addr>
  <!-- Organization.identifier -->
  <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
    <ext:id root="1.2.36.51824754455"
      assigningAuthorityName="Devonport Family Medicine Clinic"/>
    <ext:code code="XX" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"/>
  </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
  </representedOrganization>
</assignedAuthor>
</author>

<!-- custodian (Organization with Mandatory Identifier) -->
<custodian>
  <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100002" extension="1.0"/>
  <assignedCustodian>
    <representedCustodianOrganization>
      <id root="ad89f638-ee4b-4a12-a6d8-2a3613343d7d"/>
      <!-- Organization.name -->
      <name>Devonport Family Medicine Clinic</name>
      <!-- Organization.telecom -->
      <telecom use="WP" value="tel:0385435556"/>
      <!-- Organization.address -->
      <addr use="PST">
        <streetAddressLine>LPO Box 235</streetAddressLine>
        <city>Strahan</city>
        <state>TAS</state>
        <postalCode>7468</postalCode>
      </addr>
      <!-- Organization.identifier -->
      <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
        <ext:id root="1.2.36.51824754455"
          assigningAuthorityName="Devonport Family Medicine Clinic"/>
        <ext:code code="XX" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"/>
      </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
    </representedCustodianOrganization>
  </assignedCustodian>
</custodian>

<!-- attester (Legal Attester) -->
<legalAuthenticator>
  <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100012" extension="1.0"/>
  <time value="201606071639+1000"/>
  <signatureCode code="S"/>
  <assignedEntity>
    <!-- attester (Legal Attester) indicating same entity as the author via the same id -->
    <id root="72fb1fcfa-80fb-463c-bc92-34f2b2cf0ecd"/>
  <assignedPerson>
    <name>
      <given>Barry</given>
      <family>Helpman</family>
      <suffix qualifier="AC">M.D.</suffix>
    </name>
    <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
      <ext:id root="1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0.8003619900015717"
        assigningAuthorityName="HPI-I"/>
      <ext:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">
        <ext:name>National Identifier</ext:name>
      </ext:assigningGeographicArea>
    </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
    <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
      <ext:id root="1.2.36.174030967.0.2"
        extension="5544887B"
        assigningAuthorityName="Medicare Provider Number"/>
      <ext:code code="PRN" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"/>
    </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
  </assignedPerson>
```

```
<ext:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">
    <ext:name>National Identifier</ext:name>
</ext:assigningGeographicArea>
</ext:asEntityIdentifier>
</assignedPerson>
</assignedEntity>
</legalAuthenticator>

<!-- Patient.generalPractitioner (Base Practitioner) -->
<participant typeCode="PART">
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100037" extension="1.0"/>
    <functionCode code="PCP"/>
    <associatedEntity classCode="PROV">
        <associatedPerson classCode="PSN">
            <!-- Practitioner.name -->
            <name use="L">
                <prefix>Dr.</prefix>
                <given>Good</given>
                <family>Doctor</family>
            </name>
        </associatedPerson>
    </associatedEntity>
</participant>

<!-- Composition.encounter -->
<componentOf>
<--encompassingEncounter (Summary of an Encounter for an Event)-->
    <encompassingEncounter>
        <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100064" extension="1.0"/>
        <id root="3d82feb6-53d9-40cc-87af-8df78c372820"/>
        <!--Encounter.class-->
        <code code="AMB">
            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4"
            codeSystemName="v3 Code System ActCode"
            displayName="ambulatory"/>
        <!--Encounter.period-->
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="IVL_TS">
            <low value="20190530090000+1000"/>
            <high value="20190530093000+1000"/>
        </effectiveTime>
    </encompassingEncounter>
</componentOf>

<component>
    <structuredBody>
        <!-- section (Medications) -->
        <component>
            <section>
                <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100061" extension="1.0"/>
                <id root="6c1bf9e7-a238-4f1f-8545-f0dbe0183cf"/>
                <!-- section (Medications).code -->
                <code code="10160-0" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
                    codeSystemName="LOINC"
                    displayName="History of Medication use Narrative"/>
                <!-- section (Medications).title -->
                <title>Medications</title>
                <!-- section (Medications).text -->
                <text mediaType="text/x-hl7-text+xml">
                    <table border="1">
                        <caption>Medicines List</caption>
                        <thead>
                            <tr>
                                <th>Medicine</th>
                                <th>Directions</th>
                                <th>Clinical Indication/Change description</th>
                                <th>Status</th>
                            </tr>
                        </thead>
                        <tbody>
                            <tr ID="Meds01">
                                <td>Bactrim DS - tablet</td>
                                <td>Take 2 tablets twice a day</td>
                                <td>To treat bacterial infections</td>
                                <td>New prescription</td>
                            </tr>
                            <tr ID="Meds02">
                                <td>Panadol 500mg - tablet</td>
                                <td>Take 1 tablet four times a day</td>
                                <td>For pain</td>
                                <td>New</td>
                            </tr>
                        </tbody>
                    </table>
                </text>
            <!-- act (List of Medicine Changes from an Event)-->
            <entry>
                <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
                    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100063" extension="1.0"/>
                    <!--List.code-->
                    <code code="10160-0"
                        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
                        codeSystemName="LOINC"
                        displayName="History of Medication use Narrative"></code>
                    <!--List.status-->
                    <statusCode code="active"></statusCode>
                    <!--List.date-->
                    <effectiveTime value="20190530100000+1000"/>
                    <!-- substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Known Medicine); taken=n -->
                    <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
```

```
<substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100015" extension="1.0"/>
  <id root="dc62bf6a-8843-4a89-9a89-713f686ee8e1"/>
  <!-- MedicationStatement.dosage -->
  <text>
    <reference value="#Meds01"/>
  </text>
  <!-- MedicationStatement.status -->
  <statusCode code="new"/>
  <!-- MedicationStatement.medication -->
  <consumable>
    <manufacturedProduct>
      <manufacturedMaterial>
        <code code="6632011000036102"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
          codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
          displayName="Bactrim DS film-coated tablet">
          <originalText>Bactrim DS - tablet</originalText>
        </code>
      </manufacturedMaterial>
    </manufacturedProduct>
  </consumable>
  <!-- MedicationStatement.reasonCode -->
  <entryRelationship typeCode="RSON">
    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
      <code code="103.10141"
        codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
        codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
        displayName="Clinical Indication">
        <value code="68566005"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
          codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
          displayName="Urinary tract infection"
          xsi:type="CD"/>
      </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
    <!--List.flag-->
    <entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ" inversionInd="true">
      <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
        <code code="288533004"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
          codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
          displayName="Change values"/>
        <!--List.change-description-->
        <text>To treat bacterial infections</text>
        <value code="prescribed"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.2.3.4.1.2.6"
          codeSystemName="MedicineItemChange"
          displayName="New prescription"
          xsi:type="CD"/>
      </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
  </substanceAdministration>
</entryRelationship>
<!-- substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Known Medicine); taken=n -->
<entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
<substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100015" extension="1.0"/>
  <id root="ec23eec6-alb9-4432-aacb-2ae889be8696"/>
  <!-- MedicationStatement.dosage -->
  <text>
    <reference value="#Meds02"/>
  </text>
  <!-- MedicationStatement.status -->
  <statusCode code="new"/>
  <!-- MedicationStatement.medication -->
  <consumable>
    <manufacturedProduct>
      <manufacturedMaterial>
        <code code="54012011000036102"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
          codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
          displayName="Panadol 500 mg film-coated tablet">
          <originalText>Panadol 500mg - tablet</originalText>
        </code>
      </manufacturedMaterial>
    </manufacturedProduct>
  </consumable>
  <!-- MedicationStatement.reasonCode -->
  <entryRelationship typeCode="RSON">
    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
      <code code="103.10141"
        codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
        codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
        displayName="Clinical Indication">
        <value xsi:type="CD">
          <originalText>For pain</originalText>
        </value>
      </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
    <!--List.flag-->
    <entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ" inversionInd="true">
      <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
        <code code="288533004"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
          codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
          displayName="Change values"/>
        <!--List.change-description-->
```

```

        <text>For pain</text>
        <value code="new"
              codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.2.3.4.1.2.6"
              codeSystemName="MedicineItemChange"
              displayName="New"
              xsi:type="CD"/>
    </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
</substanceAdministration>
</entryRelationship>
</act>
</entry>
</section>
</component>

<!-- section (Allergies) -->
<component>
<section>
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100069" extension="1.0"/>
    <id root="e8a81398-ef49-4193-b95a-1dfaall4f54d"/>
    <!-- section (Allergies).code -->
    <code code="48765-2"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
          codeSystemName="LOINC"
          displayName="Allergies &or adverse reactions"/>
    <!-- section (Allergies).title -->
    <title>Allergies and Adverse Reactions</title>
    <!-- section (Allergies).text -->
    <text mediaType="text/x-hl7-text+xml">
        <content ID="ALLERGY">No known allergies.</content>
    </text>
    <!--observation (Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance)-->
    <entry>
        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100014" extension="1.0"/>
            <code code="102.05517"
                  codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
                  codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
                  displayName="Adverse Reaction">
            </code>
            <!--AllergyIntolerance.code-->
            <value xsi:type="CD"
                  code="716186003"
                  codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
                  codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
                  displayName="No known allergy"/>
            <!--AllergyIntolerance.clinical-Status-->
            <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
                <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                    <code code="103.32013"
                          codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
                          codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
                          displayName="Clinical Status"/>
                    <value code="active"
                          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.642.1.118"
                          codeSystemName="AllergyIntoleranceClinicalStatus"
                          displayName="Active"
                          xsi:type="CD"/>
                </observation>
            <!--AllergyIntolerance.verification-Status-->
            <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
                <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                    <code code="103.32012"
                          codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
                          codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
                          displayName="Verification Status"/>
                    <value code="confirmed"
                          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.642.1.116"
                          codeSystemName="AllergyIntoleranceVerificationStatus"
                          displayName="Confirmed"
                          xsi:type="CD"/>
                </observation>
            </entryRelationship>
        </observation>
    </entry>
    </section>
</component>

<!-- section (Event Overview) -->
<component>
<section>
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100059" extension="1.0"/>
    <!-- section (Event Overview).code -->
    <code code="101.16672"
          codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
          codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
          displayName="Event Overview"/>
    <!-- section (Event Overview).title -->
    <title>Event Details</title>
    <!-- section (Event Overview).text -->
    <text mediaType="text/x-hl7-text+xml">
        <paragraph>Patient presented for follow-up with urinary tract infection on 30 May.</paragraph>
        <paragraph>Complaining of frequent and painful urinating. Midstream urine test was done and revealed urinary infection.</paragraph>
        <paragraph>Culture and sensitivity test discovered escherichia coli sensitive to Bactrim.</paragraph>
        <paragraph>Patient was prescribed Bactrim 2 tablets twice a day, and Panadol one tablet 4 times a day.</paragraph>
        <paragraph>Patient has no allergies.</paragraph>
    </text>
    <!--encounter (Summary of Encounter for an Event)-->

```

```
<entry>
  <encounter classCode="ENC" moodCode="EVN">
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100062" extension="1.0"/>
    <id root="3d82feb6-53d9-40cc-87af-8df78c372820"/>
    <!--Encounter.class-->
    <code code="AMB"
      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4"
      codeSystemName="v3 Code System ActCode"
      displayName="ambulatory"/>
    <!--Encounter.encounter-description-->
    <text>Patient presented for follow-up with urinary tract infection on 30 May. Complaining of frequent and painful urinating.  
Midstream urine test was done and revealed urinary infection. Culture and sensitivity test discovered escherichia coli sensitiv.  
Patient was prescribed Bactrim 2 tablets twice a day, and Panadol one tablet 4 times a day. Patient has no allergies.</text>
    <!--Encounter.status-->
    <statusCode code="finished"/>
    <!--Encounter.period-->
    <effectiveTime xsi:type="IVL_TS">
      <low value="20190530090000+1000"/>
      <high value="20190530093000+1000"/>
    </effectiveTime>
  </encounter>
</entry>
</section>
</component>

<!--section (Medical history)-->
<component>
  <section>
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100041" extension="1.0"/>
    <id root="db25390c-29ca-4fad-a3ff-31bc7f7767a0"/>
    <!-- section (Medical history).code -->
    <code code="101.16117"
      codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
      codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
      displayName="Medical History"/>
    <!-- section (Medical history).title -->
    <title>Medical History</title>
    <!-- section (Medical history).text -->
    <text mediaType="text/x-hl7-text+xml">
      <table border="1">
        <caption>Condition Details</caption>
        <thead>
          <tr>
            <th>Condition</th>
            <th>Onset Date Time</th>
          </tr>
        </thead>
        <tbody>
          <tr>
            <td>Urinary tract infection</td>
            <td>2019-05-10</td>
          </tr>
        </tbody>
      </table>
    </text>
    <!--observation (Summary Statement of Condition)-->
    <entry>
      <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
        <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100054" extension="1.0"/>
        <code code="282291009"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
          codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
          displayName="Diagnosis interpretation"/>
        <!--Condition.onset-->
        <effectiveTime>
          <low value="20190510"/>
        </effectiveTime>
        <!--Condition.code-->
        <value code="68566005"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
          codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
          displayName="Urinary tract infection"
          xsi:type="CD"/>
        <!--Condition.clinicalStatus-->
        <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
          <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <code code="103.32013"
              codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
              codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
              displayName="Clinical Status"/>
            <value code="active"
              codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.642.1.156"
              codeSystemName="Condition Clinical Status Codes"
              displayName="Active"
              xsi:type="CD"/>
          </observation>
          <!--Condition.verificationStatus-->
        </entryRelationship>
        <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
          <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <code code="103.32012"
              codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
              codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
              displayName="Verification Status"/>
            <value code="confirmed"
              codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.642.1.158"
              codeSystemName="ConditionVerificationStatus"
              displayName="Confirmed"
              xsi:type="CD"/>
          </observation>
        <!--Condition.verificationStatus-->
      </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
  </component>
```

```
        </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
</observation>
</entry>
</section>
</component>

<!-- Administrative Observations -->
<component>
<section>
<templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100000" extension="1.0"/>
<id root="417ad86d-8ed0-42f3-b2fc-cd9b8d6c4f8f"/>
<!-- section.code -->
<code code="102.16080"
      codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
      codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
      displayName="Administrative Observations"/>
<!-- section.title -->
<title>Administrative Observations</title>
<!--Practitioner.qualification-->
<ext:coverage2 typeCode="COVBY">
    <ext:templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100038" extension="1.0"/>
    <ext:entitlement classCode="COV" moodCode="EVN">
        <ext:id root="1.2.36.1.2001.1005.56" extension="MED0000932850"
          assigningAuthorityName="AHPRA"/>
        <ext:code code="253111" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.13.62"
          displayName="General Medical Practitioner">
            <originalText>AHPRA qualification for General Practitioner</originalText>
        </ext:code>
        <ext:participant typeCode="HLD">
            <ext:participantRole classCode="ASSIGNED">
                <!-- matching technical id for the Practitioner entity -->
                <ext:id root="72fb1fca-80fb-463c-bc92-34f2b2cf0ecd"/>
            </ext:participantRole>
        </ext:participant>
        </ext:entitlement>
    </ext:coverage2>
</section>
</component>

<!--section (Diagnostic Investigations)-->
<component>
<section>
<templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100060" extension="1.0"/>
<id root="056fa0ac-fd6d-4420-9e72-9826b2aefbf9"/>
<!-- section (Diagnostic Investigations).code -->
<code code="30954-2"
      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
      codeSystemName="LOINC"
      displayName="Relevant diagnostic tests &or laboratory data"/>
<!-- section (Diagnostic Investigations).title -->
<title>Diagnostic Investigations</title>
<!-- section (Diagnostic Investigations).text -->
<text mediaType="text/x-hl7+text+xml">
    <table border="1">
        <caption>Diagnostic results</caption>
        <thead>
            <tr>
                <th>Test</th>
                <th>Result</th>
                <th>Date</th>
            </tr>
        </thead>
        <tbody>
            <tr>
                <td>Culture and sensitivity</td>
                <td>Escherichia coli grown</td>
                <td>2019-05-10</td>
            </tr>
        </tbody>
    </table>
</text>
</section>
</component>
</structuredBody>
</component>
</clinicalDocument>
```

Appendix C. Mapping from requirements

This informative appendix provides mapping from the data items (i.e. requirements) in *Shared Health Summary Information Requirements [NEHT2015e]*.

The table below matches the data items to the elements of the Event Summary (ES) model as shown in the Element column of the CDA Mapping table in the relevant template, and their corresponding CDA schema element(s) path from the root CDA schema element ClinicalDocument.

References

- [DH2017o] Australian Digital Health Agency, 21 December 2017, *Clinical Documents Common Conformance Profile*, Version 1.7.
<https://developer.digitalhealth.gov.au/resources-and-documentation/clinical-documents/ep-2563-2017-dh-2481-2017>
- [DH2018d] Australian Digital Health Agency, 01 November 2018, *Participant Model Specification*, Version 1.0.
<https://www.digitalhealth.gov.au/implementation-resources/clinical-documents/participant-model-specification>
- [DH2019a] Australian Digital Health Agency, 28 February 2019, *Common - Clinical Document*, Version 1.5.2.
<https://developer.digitalhealth.gov.au/specifications/clinical-documents/ep-2807-2019>
- [DH2019g] Australian Digital Health Agency, Not yet published, *Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide*, Version 1.0.0.
<https://www.digitalhealth.gov.au/implementation-resources/clinical-documents/common-clinical-document>
- [HI2011] Health Intersections, 2011, *Representation of Common Australian Identifiers in v2 and CDA*, accessed 28 November 2011.
<http://www.healthintersections.com.au/?p=721>
- [HL7AUBIG] HL7 Australia, Continuous Integration Build, *Australian Base Profiles Implementation Guide*, v1.0.0 (Standard for Trial Use), accessed 07 March 2019.
<http://build.fhir.org/ig/hl7au/au-fhir-base/index.html>
- [HL7CDAR2] Health Level Seven, Inc., January 2010, *HL7 Clinical Document Architecture*, Release 2.
http://www.hl7.org/implement/standards/product_brief.cfm?product_id=7
- [HL7FHIR3] Health Level Seven, Inc., 19 April 2017, *FHIR*, Release 3 (STU), accessed 10 Mar 2019.
<http://hl7.org/fhir/STU3/index.html>
- [HL7RIM] Health Level Seven, Inc., January 2010, *HL7 Version 3 Standard – Reference Information Model*.
http://www.hl7.org/implement/standards/product_brief.cfm?product_id=77
- [HL7V3] Health Level Seven, Inc., January 2010, *HL7 Version 3 Standard*.
http://www.hl7.org/implement/standards/product_brief.cfm?product_id=186
- [HL7V3DT] Health Level Seven, Inc., January 2010, *HL7 V3 RIM, Data types and Vocabulary*.
<http://www.hl7.org/memonly/downloads/v3edition.cfm>
- [IHTS2010] International Health Terminology Standards Development Organisation, January 2010, *SNOMED CT*, accessed 15 March 2010.
<http://www.ihtsdo.org/snomed-ct>
- [INFO2009] Canada Health Infoway, *CDA Validation Tools: infoway_release_2_2X_18.zip*.
<http://www.hl7.org/memonly/downloads/v3edition.cfm>
- [NEHT2011bv] National E-Health Transition Authority, 10 October 2011, *Representing Coding in CDA Documents Implementation Guidance*, Version 1.0.
<https://developer.digitalhealth.gov.au/resources-and-documentation/clinical-documents/ep-1094-2011-nehta-1097-2011>
- [NEHT2012s] National E-Health Transition Authority, 07 March 2012, *CDA Rendering Specification*, Version 1.0.
<https://developer.digitalhealth.gov.au/resources-and-documentation/clinical-documents/ep-1094-2011-nehta-1199-2012>
- [NEHT2015b] National E-Health Transition Authority, 10 April 2015, *Event Summary Structured Content Specification*, Version 1.2.
<https://www.digitalhealth.gov.au/implementation-resources/clinical-documents/EP-1817-2015/NEHTA-1847-2015>
- [NEHT2015e] National E-Health Transition Authority, 10 April 2015, *Shared Health Summary Information Requirements*, Version 1.1.
<https://developer.digitalhealth.gov.au/specifications/clinical-documents/ep-2397-2017/nehta-1837-2015>

- [NEHT2015f] National E-Health Transition Authority, 10 April 2015, *Event Summary CDA Implementation Guide*, Version 1.3.
<https://www.digitalhealth.gov.au/implementation-resources/clinical-documents/EP-1817-2015/NEHTA-1846-2015>
- [RFC2119] Network Working Group, 1997, *Key Words for Use in RFCs to Indicate Requirement Levels*, accessed 05 March 2019.
<https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc2119>
- [RING2009] Ringholm, 2009, *CDA Examples*, accessed 15 March 2010.
http://www.ringholm.de/download/CDA_R2_examples.zip
- [SA2014a] Standards Australia, 2014, *AS 4846 (2014) – Person and provider identification in healthcare*.
<http://infostore.saiglobal.com/store/details.aspx?ProductID=1753860>
- [UCUM] The Unified Code for Units of Measure, 2009, *The Unified Code for Units of Measure*, accessed 01 November 2012.
<http://unitsofmeasure.org/trac/>

DRAFT